The book cover features a highly ornate, symmetrical border in a dark, textured material. The border is composed of intricate scrollwork, floral motifs, and what appear to be stylized architectural elements like columns and arches. The central area of the cover is a solid, deep red color with a fine, woven texture. This central area is framed by a thin black rectangular border.

THE PILGRIM'S PROGRESS

BUNYAN

A small, decorative crest or emblem is positioned directly below the 'LONGMANS' ENGLISH CLASSICS' text. It features a crown-like top with several pointed elements, and a base that resembles a stylized flower or a cluster of leaves.

LONGMANS'
ENGLISH
CLASSICS

Lucile A. Williams

S.H.S.

Lucile A. Williams,

2710 N. Walnut St.

Shelbyville

S.H.S. Illinois

LONGMANS' ENGLISH CLASSICS

EDITED BY

GEORGE RICE CARPENTER, A.B.

PROFESSOR OF RHETORIC AND ENGLISH COMPOSITION IN COLUMBIA UNIVERSITY

JOHN BUNYAN

THE PILGRIM'S PROGRESS

Longmans' English Classics

JOHN BUNYAN'S
THE PILGRIM'S PROGRESS

EDITED

WITH NOTES AND AN INTRODUCTION

BY

CHARLES SEARS BALDWIN, PH.D.

PROFESSOR OF RHETORIC IN YALE UNIVERSITY



NEW YORK
LONGMANS, GREEN, AND CO.
LONDON, BOMBAY, AND CALCUTTA

COPYRIGHT, 1905,
BY
LONGMANS, GREEN, AND CO.

First Edition, September, 1905
Reprinted, July, 1909

PREFACE

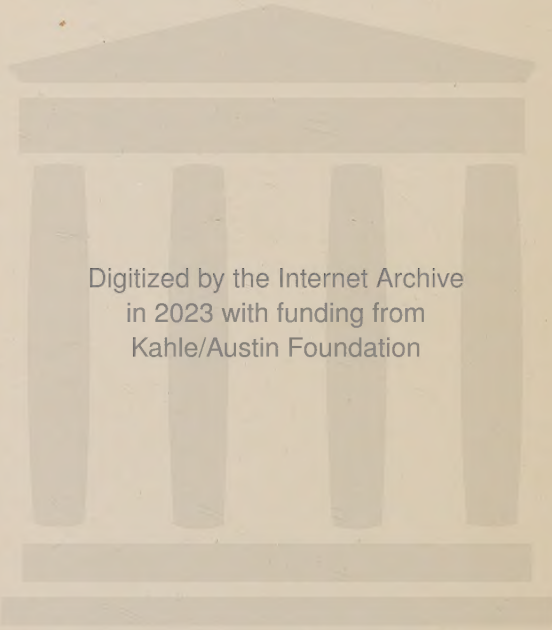
THE text of this edition corresponds as closely as possible to that of the last edition issued by Bunyan himself. To this end, the facsimile reprint of the first edition has been collated throughout with Offor's *variorum*. But spelling and punctuation have been consistently modernized in every point that is not significant. Thus obsolete spellings such as *shew*, and mere idiosyncrasies of punctuation, not involving the structure of the sentence, have been changed to conform to present use ; but obsolete inflections and syntax, with all their inconsistencies, have been carefully retained. For these latter have a twofold significance : they are documents both for the history of the language and for the style of Bunyan.

Two other changes adapt this edition to its particular use. Bunyan's marginal explanations, though they are sometimes racy, are now quite superfluous for people accustomed to read currently ; and the marginal references to the Bible are equally superfluous for a generation well supplied with concordances. Moreover these marginal notes, if indeed they were used, might be a distraction, instead of a help, in the school study of literature. Therefore they have been omitted.

The general object of the critical apparatus is that of all school editions, — to help students understand and appreciate. The particular methods are, first, to group the notes under a few distinct aspects, and, secondly, to stimulate, rather than preclude, reflection and study. The facility with which the memorizing of a few facts and a few adjectives may satisfy perfunctory tests still warns us to make the study of literature both serious to the whole class and significant to the individual.

C. S. B.

YALE UNIVERSITY, July, 1905.



Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2023 with funding from
Kahle/Austin Foundation

CONTENTS

	PAGE
PREFACE	v
INTRODUCTION	ix
THE AUTHOR'S APOLOGY	3
TEXT OF THE PILGRIM'S PROGRESS	11
NOTES	
I. Note on Books of Reference	153
II. Notes on Bunyan's Grammar	155
III. Notes on Passages	166
IV. Suggestions for First Recitations	172
V. Specimen Topics for Review or Examination	174
VI. Specimen Topics for Themes	176
VII. Chronological Table	178
VIII. Glossary	180

INTRODUCTION

I. THE PILGRIM'S PROGRESS AS A CLASSIC.

WHEN we say that "The Pilgrim's Progress" is a classic, we mean that generations of readers have approved it as a piece of high and pure literary art; we place it among the books that are great for all time. But as we place it so, beside "Paradise Lost," beside the "Æneid," we feel a certain wonder and hesitation. For "The Pilgrim's Progress" has two cardinal qualities that we do not usually associate with the classics of literature: it is religious, and it is popular. Very little of the great literature in any language is religious; very little, like "Robinson Crusoe" and some of Shakespeare's comedies, is popular in the full sense of being constantly loved by the great mass of readers. And we must search far to find another classic that is both the one and the other. "The Pilgrim's Progress" stands almost alone among the classics in being both essentially religious and essentially popular.

True, in expressing the hopes and struggles of mankind, many great writers have touched on things divine. Divine things have a large place in the "Æneid," a still larger place in the "Divina Commedia" and in our own "Paradise Lost." But these great poems are not so much religious as theological. They speculate on the order of the universe; they symbolize abstract truths; they even embody dogmas. "The Pilgrim's Progress" differs from them sharply in being a practical guide for daily conduct, a parable of the common journey of common men. Thus it is, in the literal sense, religious; and it is almost our only religious classic.

Its popularity, again, is larger than the popularity of most classics. It has been read for two hundred years, not only by

all English-speaking people who have a taste for literature, but also by thousands who have no taste for literature and who may never have thought of it as literary. It was the appeal of a common man to common men ; and it has been really read and re-read, not simply heard of and admired, by plain people everywhere. To popularity of this kind there are few parallels. One thinks of "Robinson Crusoe," and then halts for another instance. Popularity in some degree, of course, every classic must have had, in order to become a classic, in order to survive. But it was a small literary circle that fostered the fame of the "Æneid" in its own time, and a comparatively small class that kept it alive in a strange fashion through the middle ages. We can hardly compare ancient popularity with modern, because ancient writers could hardly reach what we now call the public, for lack of the printing press. But Milton had the press. He could, in something of our modern sense, appeal to the public. Yet his very appeal for the liberty of that press reached the few, not the many ; and "Paradise Lost," like the "Æneid," must always be the joy and admiration of the intellectually superior. It is over the heads of the crowd. Now it is to the crowd that Bunyan spoke. "The Pilgrim's Progress" is popular in the sense that it is one of the very few literary classics written of the people, for the people, almost by the people.

II. THE PILGRIM'S PROGRESS AS PURITAN.

In this twofold character, religious and popular, "The Pilgrim's Progress" reminds us of its country and its age. It is a product of English Puritanism. For the Puritan movement, too wide in its significance to be expounded here, was at once religious and popular, both blended in one. It was a great effort for popular government in church and state. It set itself against hierarchy and monarchy alike ; it overthrew both the king and the bishops. The immediate practical result in politics was the Commonwealth, and, in religion, the spread of the congregational organization and mode of wor-

ship. These results, and the many others that followed from them, proceeded from a single, dominant Puritan principle — the independence of the individual man in the kingdom of earth and the kingdom of heaven.

The age of Bunyan and Milton was a flood-tide for England, of protest, dissent, and individual assertion in religion, and, in politics, of popular government. John Bunyan was born (1628) eight years after the Pilgrims landed on Plymouth Rock, while the French Protestants were standing siege at La Rochelle, just before the German Protestants had found their champion in Gustavus Adolphus (1630), and in the very year of the English Petition of Right. He was a lad during the Civil War (1642–1646), a young man during the Commonwealth. Twelve years he was himself in prison for insisting on the liberty of preaching; and he died in the year (1688) of the declaration of William of Orange to the English people.

Puritanism is echoed sometimes in Bunyan's very language. "Conviction for sin," "awakenings for sin," "professors" of religion, — these words of "the language of Canaan" (page 84) were common religious speech in the thatched midland cottages at whose doors Bunyan mended pots and pans, and in the rough-hewn New England houses where his great book found quick sympathy. He speaks for the soldiers of Cromwell and of Miles Standish, much more for that unknown multitude who, though no warriors, felt the call to work out their own salvation with fear and trembling. He speaks for the people that could say unabashed, man to man, "How stands it between God and your soul now?" (page 133).

The position of such men among their "worldly" fellows, the feelings of each side toward the other, have never been more surely divined, never more vividly expressed, than by Bunyan. "There is a company of these crazed-headed coxcombs," says Mr. Obstinate (page 14), "that when they take a fancy by the end are wiser in their own eyes than seven men that can render a reason." "'Too precise" (page 50), "some peevish or melancholy man" (page 80), — phrases like these continually echo what is exhibited fully in Faithful's

account of Shame (pages 68, 69) and in the whole chapter (pages 83-91) on Vanity Fair. Sometimes, indeed, Bunyan seems Puritan in that less pleasing sense which brought the name into reproach. Many men of Bunyan's day resented in the Puritans that self-satisfaction and censoriousness which are made ridiculous in Shakespeare's Malvolio. So some readers have resented, as of the same temper, the dialogues with Talkative (pages 76-80) and Ignorance (pages 133-137). Something unkind, something Pharisaical, is easily seen by the world in those who feel bound to protest against the world. But whether this attitude was essential in Puritanism or not, certainly it was not essential in John Bunyan. Arrogance was not one of his sins. Uncompromising as the stiffest of them all on every point of principle, he yet shows in the ground of all his work a large and positive charity. His creed was no stronger than his love.

For to say that in its religious and its popular character "Pilgrim's Progress" bespeaks its time is not to limit it by its time. Every piece of literature must bear the character of its time and its place; but no piece of literature that expresses merely its own time and its own place can be admitted among the classics. Only the less significant traits of "Pilgrim's Progress" can be traced to Puritanism. The words that went from Bedford jail to all Christendom¹ occasionally bespeak the Puritan; they always bespeak the genius.

III. THE PILGRIM'S PROGRESS AS A PRODUCT OF BUNYAN'S LIFE.

1. *The Outward Life (Biographical Summary).*

John Bunyan was born of Bedfordshire villagers at Elstow in 1628. Like his father before him, he was bred to the trade of a tinker. A healthful trade, a rare trade for learning men and women, it was also a trade in low esteem. Tinkers of

¹ *Pilgrim's Progress* has been translated into most languages, and used as a book of instruction by most Christian missions.

that time are so often classed with vagrants that we must suppose them to have yielded in many cases to the temptations of the road. Besides the education of his own eyes and ears, John Bunyan had hardly any throughout his life — little schooling, little reading, little direction of any kind. He was peculiarly a self-made man. Vivid childish dreams indicated a sensitive brain. His gift of speech appeared first in extraordinary profanity. After a little soldiering in the Civil Wars, he married about the age of twenty. Smitten with the keenest sense of sin, he endured prolonged agonies before gaining peace of mind. Then he entered into communion and fellowship with the Bedford Baptists, among whom he soon revealed his gift. Arrested in November, 1660, he was indicted at the Bedford quarter session of January, 1661, for "devilishly and perniciously abstaining from coming to church to hear divine service, and for being a common upholder of several unlawful meetings and conventicles to the great disturbance and distraction of the good subjects of this Kingdom, contrary to the laws of our sovereign lord the king."¹ Refusing to renounce the liberty of preaching, he remained in the Bedford county jail twelve years. On his release in 1672 under the King's general declaration of indulgence, he was licensed "to be a teacher of the congregation allowed by us in the house of Josiah Roughed, Bedford, for the use of such as do not conform to the Church of England, who are of the persuasion commonly called Congregational."² His second imprisonment, six months (1675-6) in the town jail on Bedford bridge, was made memorable by the writing of "The Pilgrim's Progress." This was published in 1678. In the ten remaining years of his life he published, besides sermons, "The Life and Death of Mr. Badman" (1680), "The Holy War" (1682), and "The Pilgrim's Progress, the Second Part" (1684).

¹ Brown, *John Bunyan*, page 152.

² Brown, page 188.

2. *The Inward Life* ("Grace Abounding").

These external events give us little clue, after all, to the greatness of "The Pilgrim's Progress." Bunyan was not a man of action. The outward events of his life are comparatively insignificant. As with most really great authors, we rather understand the man from the book than the book from the man. But in Bunyan's case there is a striking exception. The inner life, that life of the mind which is the only significant life of a great author, is not merely expressed as authors commonly express themselves in their works; it is also recorded. "Grace Abounding" (1666) is the autobiography of his soul. This is in truth the life of John Bunyan, and the only life that tells us why he could write for all mankind. For this book reveals his amazing faculty of vision, his power, that is, to see the invisible things of the spirit. Seeing them as it were before his eyes, he felt them as most men feel the love or the loss of a friend; he struggled to win them as most men struggle for money or fame. This makes the Puritan tinker, "of a low and inconsiderable generation," great in the kingdom of heaven. "Pilgrim's Progress" is at once popular and religious because its author was at once utterly a man of the people and utterly a man of God. All things were lacking in his life that might hinder direct and constant touch with ordinary men and women, with the real people of this world; and he had the courage and the faith to put all things from him that might hinder his constant touch with the other world. His expression of the spiritual world is most simple and homely because he himself was simpler and homelier than any other Englishman who ever took a pen; but it is most intense because he himself was a fellow-citizen with the saints.

3. *The Preaching Habit.*

These two essential traits of the man, the religious and the popular, made him a preacher; and his preaching in turn reacted upon them, developing and enhancing them to the high-

est. If we think of Bunyan as he thought of himself, we must think of him as the preacher of the spiritual life to common men. True, his great and abiding works are not sermons; but the sermon instinct and training are behind all; and, in a larger sense, there is in all his work a certain oral character, as if the printed words had first been spoken. Speech sounded in his ears and was directed to the ears rather than the eyes of others.

Indeed, Bunyan's preaching habit occasionally delays the story of "The Pilgrim's Progress" by rather tedious sermon-heads, as in the reply to Ignorance (page 136); but such passages are not characteristic. These occasional disputations are of the age rather than of the man. They are not his own way. He was not a reasoner. He did not know how to convince men by a logical series of paragraphs. The headings and sub-headings of his sermons may be merely false framework, set up because everybody about him thought that was the way to make a sermon. The strength of his preaching was not there, but in his faculty of vision and his faculty of speech. He pictured vividly in his own mind both things and thoughts; he had a seeing imagination. And to an equally extraordinary degree he had the gift to utter what he saw and felt in words that would make his hearers see and feel too. His gift of speech was so great that he had to speak. He had to express himself. No bar could stop him; not ignorance, for he contrived to learn enough from the poorest hints; not repression, for prison merely forced him to write what he would have spoken. He might well cry in the apostolic words, "Woe is me if I preach not." The faculty of vision, the faculty of spiritual emotion, above all the faculty of imparting both visions and emotions in speech, these powers appear plainly, throughout Bunyan's work, in three corresponding qualities. First, all his characteristic work is very concrete. It is what we now call picturesque. It is full of images. Even when he explains, he habitually falls into description. As his mind habitually turned abstract ideas into images, so his speech is habitually in

terms of things actually seen. All "The Pilgrim's Progress" is a vision; and this his greatest work is merely the best embodiment of his constant habit. Secondly, his appeal is not to the intellect, but to the feelings. Finally, all his work is essentially oral. Most of it that was written was first spoken. Much of it was never written. And even when he wrote to be read, instead of speaking to be heard, his forms of expression are more oral than those of any other English writer except the orators. Bunyan should be read aloud. It seems as if he wrote aloud.

In the only great book that Bunyan knew is the following passage :

"And the Lord sent Nathan unto David. And he came unto him and said unto him, There were two men in one city, the one rich and the other poor. The rich man had exceeding many flocks and herds; but the poor man had nothing save one little ewe lamb, which he had bought and nourished up; and it grew up together with him and with his children. It did eat of his own meat, and drank of his own cup, and lay in his bosom, and was unto him as a daughter. And there came a traveller unto the rich man, and he spared to take of his own flock and of his own herd to dress for the wayfaring man that was come unto him, but took the poor man's lamb and dressed it for the man that was come to him. And David's anger was greatly kindled against the man; and he said to Nathan, As the Lord liveth, the man that hath done this thing shall surely die, and he shall restore the lamb fourfold, because he did this thing, and because he had no pity. And Nathan said to David, Thou art the man." (2 Samuel xii. 1-7.)

That is the way Bunyan preached; and that is the way he wrote.

IV. THE PILGRIM'S PROGRESS AS A VISION.

We shall appreciate him more accurately, then, by considering in detail each of his cardinal qualities; and first, that habit of concrete and specific words which came from his faculty of vision. "Remember," he says in the introduction to "Grace

Abounding," "your tears and prayers to God, yea, how you sighed *under every hedge* for mercy . . . Have you forgot the *close*, the *milk-house*, the *stable*, the *barn* . . . where God did visit your souls?" By such terms as these the appeal is direct and immediate. They make the hearer feel by making him see. It is so always. He makes mental states real by making them almost visible and tangible. With him a figure of speech is not merely a form of expression; it is *the* form of expression. He sees it in his mind; it takes shape; and as he sees it, so he utters it. "By these things my mind was now so turned that it lay like a horse-leech at the vein, still crying out, 'Give, give.'"¹ Or again:—

"I often, when these temptations had been with force upon me, did compare myself to the case of such a child whom some gypsy hath by force took up in her arms, and is carrying from friend and country. Kick sometimes I did, and also shriek and cry; but yet I was bound in the wings of the temptation, and the wind would carry me away."²

These concrete, specific, figurative forms of expression are not added to illustrate or adorn. They express the thought faithfully as he thought it. For him to think was to see. His power of vision is not the mastery of a literary device; it is the development of a habit born in his brain. No one can doubt that the images in which he presents the spiritual experiences of "Grace Abounding" are not chosen to illustrate that experience, but are the very facts of the experience itself.

"I could also," he says earnestly at the end of his introduction, "have stepped into a style much higher than this . . . and could have adorned all things more than here I have seemed to do; but I dare not. God did not play in tempting of me; neither did I play when I sunk as into the bottomless pit, when the pangs of hell caught hold upon me. Wherefore I may not play in relating of them, but be plain and simple, and lay down the thing as it was."

Therefore we may confidently accept as faithful, literal

¹ *Grace Abounding*.

² *Ibid.*

record the many passages such as the following, and see in them what a brain was his instrument : —

“At last, when I was as it were quite worn out with fear lest it should not lay hold on me, these words did sound suddenly within my heart : ‘He is able.’ But methought this word *able* was spoke loud unto me. It showed a great word; it seemed to be writ in great letters.”

Remarkable as this seeing imagination is in itself, it is no more remarkable than its close associations with his gift of speech. As he thinks, he sees; and as he sees, he hears words or wishes to utter them. There is the physical basis of Bunyan’s genius, the brain that could speak so that all men might see.¹

“Grace Abounding,” indeed, is in every way the best commentary on Bunyan. It even records, among his earlier experiences, one that not only typifies the mental habits which underlay his peculiar literary power, but also seems like the nucleus of “The Pilgrim’s Progress.”

“About this time, the state and happiness of these poor people at Bedford was thus, in a kind of vision, presented to me. I saw as if they were on the sunny side of some high mountain, there refreshing themselves with the pleasant beams of the sun, while I was shivering and shrinking in the cold, afflicted with frost, snow, and dark clouds. Methought also, betwixt me and them, I saw a wall that did compass about this mountain. Now through this wall my soul did greatly desire to pass, concluding that if I could, I would even go into the very midst of them, and there also comfort myself with the heat of their sun.

“About this wall I bethought myself to go again and again, still

¹ Professor Royce, in an investigation of the widest interest, has translated *Grace Abounding* into the terms of modern psychology. The record should be read entire; but a brief quotation will suggest its drift. “Automatic internal vision . . . with extraordinary detail and with strong emotional accompaniment . . . a frequent incident in Bunyan’s inner life . . . became the main source of his peculiar artistic power.” And, again, rejecting the theory of hallucination, he interprets Bunyan’s torments as systematized, insistent motor speech-functions. (Josiah Royce : *The Case of John Bunyan, Psychological Review*, vol. i. (1894), pages 22, 134, 230.)

prying as I went, to see if I could find some way or passage by which I might enter therein; but none could I find for some time. At the last I saw, as it were, a narrow gap, like a little door-way in the wall, through which I attempted to pass. Now the passage being very strait and narrow, I made many efforts to get in, but all in vain, even until I was well nigh quite beat out by striving to get in. At last, with great striving, methought I at first did get in my head, and after that, by a sidling striving, my shoulders and my whole body. Then I was exceeding glad, went and sat down in the midst of them, and so was comforted with the light and heat of their sun."

1. *A Vision True to Bunyan's Imagination.*

When we thus comprehend that Bunyan's allegory was not a literary method deliberately adopted for literary effect, but the expression by a born speaker of the images in which he habitually thought, we understand better why "The Pilgrim's Progress" has been, and is still, and perhaps always will be, more popular than any other allegory ever written.¹ Allegory has sometimes been more popular as a literary form than it is now; but always it risks the loss of popular appeal when it seems artificial. "The Faery Queene" is a beautiful allegory, beloved by poets and by many readers of poetical sensibility, admired by every one of literary taste. Why has it never become popular? Because the Red Cross Knight and Una and Duessa and the other personages are figures delicately contrived by Spenser to symbolize certain virtues and vices, not seen by Spenser in his own mind as real persons; because the combats are shadowy and artificial, not distinct and real.

¹ The question of Bunyan's possible indebtedness to literary sources for the idea and method of *The Pilgrim's Progress* is discussed and dismissed in Brown's twelfth chapter. All the literary evidence and all the facts of Bunyan's life are against the supposition of any debt whatever. The two commonest allegories of human life, as Professor Dowden says (*Puritan and Anglican*, page 248), are, first that it is a pilgrimage, second that it is a warfare. The one is the basis of *The Pilgrim's Progress*; the other, of *The Holy War*. If Bunyan derived them from anything but common fancy, he derived them from the Bible. Nor has his method any essential resemblance to that of any other treatment of these world-old ideas.

But Bunyan's images, whether of persons or of actions or of feelings, are the main facts of his life. They were as actual to him as the tools of his tinkering trade. He was a common man, speaking the common speech; Spenser was an aristocrat, speaking the language of the court. There is the other important reason for the difference. But the main reason is that Bunyan's realization of things unseen is not made by literary contrivance, but born of reality.¹

2. *A Vision True to Bunyan's Observation.*

To his extraordinary realization of his own mental images was added an intimate knowledge of other men. Though his inner life, as has been said, determined his habits and character to a very unusual degree, though it was by far the greater part of him, yet it was not all. He was not a recluse.

¹ A far closer comparison may be made with the allegory *Everyman*; for that is a kind of Pilgrim's Progress for the stage. *Everyman*, a fifteenth-century English version of a Dutch drama bearing the same name, is what is known as a morality play, a play, that is, in which the virtues and vices walk the stage as persons. *Everyman* himself, as his name implies, is the personification of human nature. Summoned in the midst of his sins by grim *Death*, he appeals piteously, for help in his last journey, to all those in whom he trusted. But gay *Fellowship* turns his back, *Kindred* is unkind, *Goods* will give nothing. Only *Good Deeds* is willing; and she is too weak to go. By her advice consulting *Knowledge* and *Confession*, he is finally supported by *Strength* and *Discretion* to meet the dread *Angel*. The play was probably popular for a while, and, as revived in our own day, has moved a few modern audiences profoundly. But it was forgotten altogether for centuries, and to the great public was never known. Yet it tells substantially the same eternal story as *The Pilgrim's Progress* by substantially the same method, allegory. The difference here is somewhat the same as the difference between Bunyan and Spenser, but not altogether. The symbolic figures are distinct enough to have pretty definite parts on the stage; and even in reading the play one realizes them more distinctly than he can realize the personages of *The Faery Queene*. But they are less distinct than Bunyan's because they are, after all, personages rather than persons. We still remember that they are figures, not real people. *Goods*, for example, is a sort of speaking idol surrounded by symbols of avarice. But Bunyan's Mr. Demas, of the hill Lucre (page 99), seems more than a personification of avarice. He seems a human being.

He was a common workman, with a family to support by a trade that took him to the doors of all sorts of common men. He was a preacher, not writing for unknown readers, but speaking to the feelings and wills of particular people. It was by the practical effort to bring peace to other men's souls that he confirmed peace in his own.¹ He knew the people to whom he preached.² He counselled them as their brother and pastor. He talked more than he preached. He preached and talked more than he wrote. He dealt every day with sin and repentance, hope, despair, selfishness, fickleness, faith, — not as they are presented in books, not merely as he saw them in himself, but as he actually found them in this man and that woman. So the men and women in "The Pilgrim's Progress," though they are made by an extraordinary imagination, are made out of close observation. He made them, not out of himself, but out of the real men and women of Bedfordshire. Few novels have more convincing pieces of characterization than the episode of Mr. By-Ends (pages 94-97) or the trial of Faithful (pages 87-91).³

¹ Royce, *Psychological Review*, i. 239.

² *Grace Abounding*.

³ That Bunyan was no novelist any one may satisfy himself by reading *Mr. Badman*. Nevertheless, in spite of its tediousness as a story, *Mr. Badman* gives abundant proof of the breadth, accuracy, and intimacy of Bunyan's acquaintance with the twistings of human character. Indeed, the book fails, not merely from being too sermonizing, but from being too documentary. It is a series of bare human facts without the vivifying of his imagination; but it is documentary proof, if any were needed, of his wide knowledge of human nature outside of himself. "Yet have I as little as may be," he says in the preface, "gone out of the road of mine own observation of things. Yea, I think I may truly say, to the best of my remembrance, all the things that I here discourse of, I mean as to matters of fact, have been acted upon the stage of this world even many times before mine eyes." The difference between *Pilgrim's Progress* and *Mr. Badman* is in artistic imagination. The former is idealized and so made universally appealing; the latter is merely stated and explained, as on the witness stand. But both reveal the eye that saw into other men as well as into himself.

V. THE PILGRIM'S PROGRESS AS EMOTIONAL.

The second characteristic of Bunyan's work, his power over the emotions, follows naturally from the first. He could make men feel with him because he could make them see with him. Emotional effects come from concrete expression. Abstractions and generalizations leave us cold. It is the concrete, the language of Nathan to David, that goes to our hearts.

This book is writ in such a dialect

As may the minds of listless men affect (page 9).

Moreover, Bunyan's appeal to feeling was in another way a necessity of his nature, in that he could not appeal much to reason. His thoughts did not move logically; and he had no logical training. Ideas with him were hardly seen and followed, but rather felt and passionately held.¹ It was no course of doctrine or chain of reasons that he got from the Bible, but only a throng of texts that seemed to struggle within him. "A piece of a sentence," he writes in "Grace Abounding," "darted in upon me;" and, a few pages later:

"'Lord,' thought I, 'if both these scriptures should meet in my heart at once, I wonder which would get the better of me.' So methought I had a longing mind that they might come both together upon me. Yea, I desired of God they might. Well, about two or three days after, so they did indeed. They bolted both upon me at a time, and did work and struggle strongly in me for a while. At last that, about Esau's birthright, began to wax weak, and withdraw, and vanish; and this, about the sufficiency of grace, prevailed with peace and joy."

This is hardly an intellectual process; it is almost pure feeling.

And in a higher sense we must seek the source of his power to make others feel in the intensity of his own experience. From his inward agonies and triumph, from going down himself, as he says, into the deep, he learned how to stir men's

¹ See Tulloch, *English Puritanism and Its Leaders*, page 420, and Royce, as above.

souls. The dark first part of "Grace Abounding" explains that moving power of which he writes so explicitly, though so modestly, in the last part. His power to stir spiritual emotions came from his own enlarged spiritual capacity.¹

VI. THE PILGRIM'S PROGRESS AS COLLOQUIAL.

Finally, Bunyan's style is oral. This third quality, closely related to its concreteness and its emotional character, summing up at once its religious and its popular significance, may even be called his distinctive note. For it runs through all his expression. That his life was preaching, that much of his written work was first spoken, has already been said, and also that his strongest native impulse was speech. It may well be remembered also that even when his works seem furthest from preaching he often writes in a kind of dramatic dialogue. But, more widely, his characteristic work sounds less like writing than like talk. It is homely and familiar — and no other author seems quite so homely, quite so familiar — because it is in the literal sense colloquial. His diction follows with fearless simplicity the ways of common speech. It is not literary in the ordinary sense; it is even illiterate, for his many revisions of "The Pilgrim's Progress" left it in many places incorrect; it is simply what a genius made of the actual every-day talk of the street.

¹ "To me the writings of John Bunyan have been and are more and more *as the odour of a field which the Lord hath blessed*, redolent of that goodness and sweetness, that unworldiness and love of Christ, that humility and horror of sin, which I take to mark the presence of the spirit of God, even in the midst of much human infirmity and delusion. It is not easy for an Englishman, Catholic or Protestant, who understands Bunyan, to read him with dry eyes and without feeling his heart softened to impressions of grace." — JOSEPH RICKABY, *St. Ignatius and John Bunyan*, *American Catholic Quarterly Review*, volume 27, page 295.

Bunyan's kinship of spirit with many whose spiritual environment was utterly different is suggested by a passage in *Grace Abounding* which reminds one of St. Francis and St. Cuthbert: "I thought I could have spoken of his love and have told of his mercy to me even to the very crows that sat upon the ploughed lands before me."

1. *Proverbial.*

Obvious instances of the colloquial habit may be found on almost every page in his use of racy popular proverbs. They are worth collecting as picturesque summaries of the worldly wisdom of our ancestors. Some of them are still current to-day.

A bird in the hand is worth two in the bush (page 31).

Every fat must stand upon his own bottom (page 38).

A saint abroad and a devil at home (page 74).

A waterman, looking one way and rowing another (page 92).

"The Pilgrim's Progress" has many another ; and as many more may be found in "Mr. Badman."

It is ill puddling in a cockatrice's den.

They run hazards that hunt the wild boar.

All was fish that came to his net.

Hedges have eyes, and little pitchers have ears.

The bird in the air knows not the notes of the bird in the snare.

Penny wise and pound foolish.

Like to like, quoth the devil to the collier.

These are the speech of oral tradition.

2. *Homely.*

Quite like it is Bunyan's own homeliness. "As for those that made boggle and stop at things," he says in "Mr. Badman," "and that could not in conscience, and for fear of death and judgment, do such things as he, he would call them fools and noddies, and charge them with being frightened with the talk of unseen bugbears." And again, "Fluster and huff and make ado for a while he may ; but God hath determined that both he and it shall melt like grease." One of the prettiest instances is the figure at page 77 : "Some cry out against sin even as the mother cries out against the child in her lap, when she calleth it slut and naughty girl, and then falls to hugging and kissing it." "The Pilgrim's Progress" is full of such

phrases; and everybody recognizes them as characteristic of Bunyan's style.¹

The direct homeliness and concreteness is sometimes strong at the expense of elegance.

"But this consideration I then only had when God gave me leave to swallow my spittle. Otherwise the noise and strength and force of these temptations would drown . . . all such thoughts." ² "I would in these days . . . even flounce towards the promise, as horses do toward sound ground that yet stick in the mire." ²

Some readers are startled at "gallons of blood" (page 132), or disgusted at his enlarging upon the scriptural figure of vomit (page 140). For Bunyan's style has some of the faults, as well as all the virtue, of common speech. It is rather strong than nice. But alike in its great force and its little nicety, it is thoroughly communal. It is the nearest approach in our literature to the very voice of the people.

3. *Unliterary.*

Thus to be as it were the inspired mouthpiece for common English speech was perhaps less Bunyan's choice than his necessity. He hardly knew any other diction. He made literature unconsciously; for he was anything but a man of letters. Without laying undue stress on the fact that at thirty he was still an illiterate tinker, it is but emphasizing the essential character of his education to say that he was almost independent of books. When we remember how far even the most original authors have formed their styles upon their reading, we must see in Bunyan a startling exception.

¹ So in his sermons: e. g., "The Pharisee did carry the bell and did wear the garland for religion; the publican was counted vile and base and reckoned among the worst of men, even as our informers and bum-bailiffs are with us at this day. The publican was a Jew; but he fell in with the heathen, and took the advantage of their tyranny to pole, to peel, to rob and impoverish his brethren. The one was an open outside sinner; the other, a filthy inside one." *A Discourse upon the Pharisee and the Publican* (1685); quoted by Brown, page 353.

² *Grace Abounding.*

Not that authors learn style by copying, or that they habitually neglect common speech, for in this respect authors vary widely; but that the thoughts and expression of literary men move habitually by literary associations. But Bunyan's mind had so extraordinarily few literary associations to work upon that it moved naturally by the oral associations of common speech. That fact, for it is a fact, explains almost by itself why his style, more constantly than any other great author's, is thoroughly oral and popular. Undoubtedly he meant it to be so; but undoubtedly he could not, without violating all truth of expression, have made it otherwise.

(a) *Hardly Biblical.*

Of course Bunyan did know one book exceptionally well. He knew the English Bible. He thumbed it from cover to cover. He read it daily. He almost lived on it. He knew much of it by heart; for he quotes widely from memory. The English Bible, then, must have influenced his style. So to some degree it did. But the inference, made by most critics, that he formed his style on the Bible, is quite too large. The point is worth investigation, for the better understanding of a great and singular genius. To begin with, we should not forget that many passages in Bunyan which at first suggest our Bible do so simply because they belong to the same century. We hastily call them Biblical because they seem somewhat archaic. Now the English Bible was occasionally archaic even for its own time, because the translators deliberately retained some passages from older versions. Moreover, their translation was made seventeen years before Bunyan was born; and the language was changing more rapidly then than it changes now. But, making due allowance for these facts, we may still convince ourselves by comparison that many of the so-called Biblical phrases in Bunyan are common seventeenth-century English.

Further, we must determine whether the style of the Bible much influenced the style of Bunyan by studying just how.

How does Bunyan use the Bible? In a word, he uses it, not as a literary model, but as any preacher uses it to-day, — by quotation. All his work is full of quotations, not only texts quoted entire, but phrases inserted verbatim or adapted to the construction of his own sentences. They are, as it were, sewed on rather than woven in. They are readily distinguishable from his own texture. For his own style remains distinct and different. Almost any page of “*The Pilgrim’s Progress*” will show this two-fold character. As in a mixture of oil and vinegar, the two elements mingle without uniting. When Bunyan is quoting, he is not like the Bible; he *is* the Bible. When he is not quoting, he is not like the Bible; he is like common speech. From the very nature of his subjects his quotations from the Bible are exceptionally frequent; but their effect on his own style is no less exceptionally small. No man of letters using the Bible so much and so exclusively could well have felt its style so little. The last thing in the Bible that affected Bunyan was its style. To him its subject was too overwhelming to leave much room for other impressions. To him it was simply the word of God. But for a few sentences of his,¹ we could hardly be sure that he was even aware it had a style.

One of the surest and most delicate tests is his susceptibility to its rhythm and other harmonies. Every fine style has its rhythms, cadences, and recurrences, subtly and almost unconsciously expressing the author’s mood. And the influence of the Bible style on other styles is clearest in this one quality. Take two instances widely different: Sir Thomas Browne and John Ruskin both echo at impassioned moments the grand cadences of the English translation of the minor prophets. But Bunyan seems rather deaf to these. His rhythms seem very slightly affected by the rhythms of the English Bible.²

¹ For instance, in the Author’s Apology (page 6):

Am I afraid to say that Holy Writ,
Which for its style and phrase puts down all wit, etc.

² This in spite of Professor Dowden’s assertion (*Puritan and Anglican*, page 249) that “their music lived within the cells of his fancy,” whatever that may mean.

Rather they are the simpler, more spontaneous rhythms of communal emotion, the prose poetry of common feeling.¹ To put the matter simply, his style is not Biblical; for he sings another tune.

4. *Alliterative.*

As if to confirm our conclusion that Bunyan's style was not formed on the English Bible, he has another trait which, though not much marked by critics, is none the less remarkable. His style is highly alliterative. Rhythm seems to have meant little to him, and the rhythms of the English Bible still less; but alliteration evidently meant much. His associations of words seem to have sprung less from cadence and measure than from initial sounds. Both kinds of recurrence, both rhythm and alliteration, may be plainly traced in classic English prose as elements of its harmony, and had a great deal more, doubtless, to do with the actual composition than we are wont to assume.² But in Bunyan's mind rhythm seems to have meant comparatively little, and alliteration correspondingly much.

"So Christian turned out of his way to go to Mr. Legality's house for help; but behold, when he was now got *hard* by the *hill*, it seemed so *high*, and also that side of it that was next the wayside did *hang* so much over, that Christian was afraid to venture further, lest the *hill* should fall on his *head*" (page 21). This case is rather harsh; and so are the following: "After a little *laying* of *letters* together, he found . . . that was the *pillar* of *salt* into which *Lot's* wife was turned when she was going to *Sodom* for *safety*, which sudden and amazing *sight*," etc. (page 101). "I cannot tell who to compare them to so fitly as to them that *pick* *pockets* in the *presence* of the

¹ Some readers will find incidental corroboration of this in occasional metrical rhythms, such as "neither afraid of the chain nor cage, nor yet of bloody death" (page 108), and will remember Charles Dickens. At page 58 is an accidental couplet:

Back, back! and we would have you to do so too,
If either life or peace is prized by you.

² See R. L. Stevenson's essay, *Some Technical Elements of Style in Literature*.

judge, or that will cut purses under the gallows. It is said of the men of Sodom that they were sinners exceedingly because they were sinners before the Lord" (page 102). The latter alliteration is adopted from the Bible, but increased. Giant Despair "getteth him a grievous crab-tree cudgel, and goes down" (page 106). Little-Faith "was one of the *weak*, and therefore he *went* to the *walls*" (page 120). Quotations might easily be multiplied; but the last one gives the clue. "Went to the walls" is a proverbial phrase. Bunyan's speech is highly proverbial; and English proverbial expressions are quite commonly alliterative. It was very probably his intimacy with common speech that made his associations habitually alliterative; or, to put it the other way, his alliteration is one of the signs that his style is oral.

When Bunyan wrote "he espied a *foul fiend* coming over the *field*" (page 54) he echoed a traditional combination of words almost as old as English; and he echoed it almost certainly from oral tradition. Here is a link in the unseen chain of human speech suddenly made visible. It suggests how intensely national, how intensely English, is this man who, receiving his mother tongue from his mother's lips, handed on what he had received,—not English changed or fixed by books, but English spoken by the forefathers.

We cannot regard as accidental, then, the likeness of certain finer passages to the older English poetry, and even sometimes to the very staves of oldest English: "Thus man, while blind, doth *wander*, but *wearieth* himself with vanity; for he knoweth not the *way* to the city of God" ("Grace Abounding"). "*Fear* followed me so hard that I *fled* the next way" (page 17). And the lovely opening of this great vision recalls the opening of another vision, written three centuries before for common men in the common speech by another English prophet,—the "Vision of Piers Plowman." "As I walked," says the Pilgrim—

As I walked through the wilderness of this world,
I lighted on a certain place where was a *den*.
And I laid me down in that place to sleep;
And as I slept I dreamed a dream (page 11).

Now hear the far voice of the ploughman :

I was *wery* forwardred, and went me to reste
Under a *brode* bank by a *bornes* side.
And as I lay and *lened* and *loked* in the wateres,
I slombered in a slepyng, it sweyyed so merye.

No, in the last analysis, Bunyan's style is as unliterary as possible, as uninfluenced by literature, as true to the ways of common spoken speech, — in a word, as oral as any style that was ever put into a book. It is the speech of a genius ; but it is still common speech. It is common speech transmuted by an intense originality. As the artistic expressive instinct of other authors uses their literary inheritance in ways so individual as to show their own creative originality, so Bunyan used the popular oral inheritance. There is his originality. He used the common speech ; but he used it as it had never been used before. He talked like Tom, Dick, and Harry ; but he talked as they could never dream of talking, in that he talked like himself.

VII. THE PILGRIM'S PROGRESS AS EMINENTLY SINCERE.

Perhaps it is not insisting too much to add that only so could he have talked like himself. He could hardly have talked like books without turning aside to think of style. Books are so large a part of the lives of most authors that literary diction can pass into their styles naturally, without deliberate artifice ; books were so small a part of his life that they could not well have passed into his style without conscious effort to make style. Any such effort would have violated his sincerity. Sincerity is the touchstone of all great style ; but in Bunyan it is so nearly pure as almost to constitute his greatness. His style is so nearly a pure medium, so nearly the absolute, unaffected expression of himself, that one can hardly refrain from calling it perfect. Its crowning merit is that it cannot long be thought of as style. Come to him as

you will ; examine his expression critically as a work of art ; you will not be long in forgetting everything but his message. He compels you to forget his language, to forget himself, to forget everything but the unseen things which are eternal. His style is a moral victory. Born an artist, he spent his life in sacrificing his art to the glory of God and the salvation of men. That is why "The Pilgrim's Progress" is at once our great religious and our great popular classic.

THE
Pilgrim's Progrefs
FROM
THIS WORLD
TO
That which is to come:

Delivered under the Similitude of a

DREAM

Wherein is Discovered,
The manner of his setting out,
His Dangerous Journey; And safe
Arrival at the Desired Countrey.

I have used Similitudes, Hof. 12. 10.

By John Bunyan.

Licensed and Entred according to Order

LONDON,

Printed for *Nath. Ponder* at the *Peacock*
in the *Poultry* near *Cornhil*, 1678.

THE
AUTHOR'S APOLOGY
FOR HIS BOOK

WHEN at the first I took my pen in hand
Thus for to write, I did not understand
That I at all should make a little book
In such a mode. Nay, I had undertook
To make another, which, when almost done,
Before I was aware I this begun.

And thus it was : I, writing of the way
And race of saints in this our gospel-day,
Fell suddenly into an allegory
About their journey and the way to glory,
In more than twenty things, which I set down.
This done, I twenty more had in my crown ;
And they again began to multiply,
Like sparks that from the coals of fire do fly.
Nay, then, thought I, if that you breed so fast,
I'll put you by yourselves, lest you at last
Should prove *ad infinitum*, and eat out
The book that I already am about.

Well, so I did ; but yet I did not think
To show to all the world my pen and ink
In such a mode. I only thought to make
I knew not what. Nor did I undertake
Thereby to please my neighbor ; no, not I ;
I did it my own self to gratify.

Neither did I but vacant seasons spend
In this my scribble ; nor did I intend
But to divert myself, in doing this,
From worser thoughts, which make me do amiss.

Thus I set pen to paper with delight,
And quickly had my thoughts in black and white.
For, having now my method by the end,
Still as I pull'd, it came ; and so I penned
It down, until it came at last to be,
For length and breadth, the bigness which you see.

Well, when I had thus put mine ends together,
I show'd them others, that I might see whether
They would condemn them, or them justify.
And some said, Let them live ; some, Let them die.
Some said, John, print it ; others said, Not so.
Some said, It might do good ; others said, No.

Now was I in a strait, and did not see
Which was the best thing to be done by me.
At last I thought, Since ye are thus divided,
I print it will ; and so the case decided.

For, thought I, some I see would have it done,
Though others in that channel do not run.
To prove, then, who advised for the best,
Thus I thought fit to put it to the test.

I further thought, if now I did deny
Those that would have it thus, to gratify,
I did not know but hinder them I might
Of that which would to them be great delight.

For those which were not for its coming forth,
I said to them, Offend you I am loth ;
Yet since your brethren pleased with it be,
Forbear to judge, till you do further see.

If that thou wilt not read, let it alone.
Some love the meat ; some love to pick the bone.
Yea, that I might them better palliate,
I did too with them thus expostulate :

May I not write in such a style as this ?
In such a method too, and yet not miss
My end, thy good ? Why may it not be done ?
Dark clouds bring waters, when the bright bring none.

Yea, dark or bright, if they their silver drops
Cause to descend, the earth, by yielding crops,
Gives praise to both, and carpeth not at either,
But treasures up the fruit they yield together ;
Yea, so commixes both that in their fruit
None can distinguish this from that. They suit
Her well when hungry ; but if she be full,
She spews out both, and makes their blessings null.

You see the ways the fisherman doth take
To catch the fish, what engines doth he make.
Behold how he engageth all his wits,
Also his snares, lines, angles, hooks, and nets.
Yet fish there be that neither hook nor line,
Nor snare, nor net, nor engine can make thine.
They must be groped for, and be tickled too,
Or they will not be catcht, whate'er you do.

How does the fowler seek to catch his game
By divers means, all which one cannot name ?
His guns, his nets, his lime-twigs, light and bell.
He creeps, he goes, he stands ; yea, who can tell
Of all his postures ? Yet there's none of these
Will make him master of what fowls he please.
Yea, he must pipe and whistle, to catch *this* ;
Yet if he does so, *that* bird he will miss.

If that a pearl may in a toad's head dwell,
And may be found too in an oyster-shell ;
If things that promise nothing do contain
What better is than gold ; who will disdain,
That have an inkling of it, there to look,
That they may find it. Now my little book,
Though void of all these paintings that may make
It with this or the other man to take,
Is not without those things that do excel
What do in brave but empty notions dwell.

“ Well, yet I am not fully satisfied
That this your book will stand, when soundly tried.”

Why, what's the matter ? “ It is dark.” What though ?
“ But it is feigned.” What of that ? I trow

Some men by feigned words, as dark as mine,
Make truth to spangle, and its rays to shine.

"But they want solidness." Speak, man, thy mind.
"They drown the weak ; metaphors make us blind."

Solidity, indeed, becomes the pen
Of him that writeth things divine to men ;
But must I needs want solidness because
By metaphors I speak ? Were not God's laws,
His gospel laws, in olden time held forth
By types, shadows, and metaphors ? Yet loth
Will any sober man be to find fault
With them, lest he be found for to assault
The highest wisdom. No, he rather stoops,
And seeks to find out what, by pins and loops,
By calves and sheep, by heifers and by rams,
By birds and herbs, and by the blood of lambs,
God speaketh to him ; and happy is he
That finds the light and grace that in them be.

Be not too forward, therefore, to conclude
That I want solidness, that I am rude.
All things solid in show not solid be.
All things in parable despise not we,
Lest things most hurtful lightly we receive,
And things that good are of our souls bereave.

My dark and cloudy words they do but hold
The truth, as cabinets inclose the gold.

The prophets used much by metaphors
To set forth truth. Yea, who so considers
Christ, his apostles too, shall plainly see,
That truths to this day in such mantles be.

Am I afraid to say that Holy Writ,
Which for its style and phrase puts down all wit,
Is everywhere so full of all these things,
Dark figures, allegories ? Yet there springs
From that same book, that lustre, and those rays
Of light, that turns our darkest nights to days.

Come, let my carper to his life now look,
And find there darker lines than in my book
He findeth any. Yea, and let him know
That in his best things there are worse lines too.

May we but stand before impartial men,
To his poor one I dare adventure ten,
That they will take my meaning in these lines
Far better than his lies in silver shrines.
Come, truth, although in swaddling-clouts, I find
Informs the judgment, rectifies the mind,
Pleases the understanding, makes the will
Submit. The memory too it doth fill
With what doth our imaginations please.
Likewise it tends our troubles to appease.

Sound words, I know, Timothy is to use,
And old wives' fables he is to refuse ;
But yet grave Paul him nowhere doth forbid
The use of parables, in which lay hid
That gold, those pearls, and precious stones that were
Worth digging for, and that with greatest care.

Let me add one word more. O man of God,
Art thou offended ? Dost thou wish I had
Put forth my matter in another dress ?
Or that I had in things been more express ?
To those that are my betters, as is fit,
Three things let me propound ; then I submit.

1. I find not that I am denied the use
Of this my method, so I no abuse
Put on the words, things, readers, or be rude
In handling figure or similitude,
In application, but, all that I may,
Seek the advance of truth this or that way.
Denied, did I say ? Nay, I have leave
(Example too, and that from them that have
God better pleased, by their words or ways,
Than any man that breatheth now a-days)
Thus to express my mind, thus to declare
Things unto thee that excellentest are.

2. I find that men as high as trees will write
 Dialogue-wise ; yet no man doth them slight
 For writing so. Indeed, if they abuse
 Truth, cursed be they, and the craft they use
 To that intent ; but yet let truth be free
 To make her sallies upon thee and me,
 Which way it pleases God : for who knows how,
 Better than he that taught us first to plough,
 To guide our minds and pens for his design ?
 And he makes base things usher in divine.

3. I find that Holy Writ, in many places,
 Hath semblance with this method, where the cases
 Do call for one thing to set forth another.
 Use it I may, then, and yet nothing smother.
 Truth's golden beams ; nay, by this method may
 Make it cast forth its rays as light as day.

And now, before I do put up my pen,
 I'll show the profit of my book, and then
 Commit both thee and it unto that hand
 That pulls the strong down, and makes weak ones stand.

This book it chalketh out before thine eyes
 The man that seeks the everlasting prize.
 It shows you whence he comes, whither he goes,
 What he leaves undone, also what he does.
 It also shows you how he runs, and runs,
 Till he unto the gate of glory comes.

It shows, too, who sets out for life amain,
 As if the lasting crown they would attain.
 Here also you may see the reason why
 They lose their labor, and like fools do die.

This book will make a traveller of thee,
 If by its counsel thou wilt ruled be.
 It will direct thee to the Holy Land,
 If thou wilt its directions understand.
 Yea, it will make the slothful active be ;
 The blind also delightful things to see.

Art thou for something rare and profitable ?
Or would'st thou see a truth within a fable ?
Art thou forgetful ? Wouldest thou remember
From New-Year's day to the last of December ?
Then read my fancies. They will stick like burrs,
And may be, to the helpless, comforters.

This book is writ in such a dialect
As may the minds of listless men affect.
It seems a novelty, and yet contains
Nothing but sound and honest gospel strains.

Would'st thou divert thyself from melancholy ?
Would'st thou be pleasant, yet be far from folly ?
Would'st thou read riddles, and their explanation ?
Or else be drowned in thy contemplation ?
Dost thou love picking meat ? Or would'st thou see
A man i' the clouds and hear him speak to thee ?
Would'st thou be in a dream, and yet not sleep ?
Or would'st thou in a moment laugh and weep ?
Wouldest thou lose thyself and catch no harm,
And find thyself again without a charm ?
Would'st read thyself, and read thou know'st not what,
And yet know whether thou art blest or not,
By reading the same lines ? O then come hither,
And lay my book, thy head, and heart together.

JOHN BUNYAN

THE PILGRIM'S PROGRESS

IN THE SIMILITUDE OF A

DREAM

As I walked through the wilderness of this world, I lighted on a certain place where was a den, and laid me down in that place to sleep ; and as I slept, I dreamed a dream. I dreamed, and behold, I saw a man clothed with rags standing in a certain place, with his face from his own house, a book in his hand, and a great burden upon his back. I looked, and saw him open the book, and read therein ; and, as he read, he wept and trembled ; and not being able longer to contain, he brake out with a lamentable cry, saying, "What shall I do?"

In this plight, therefore, he went home, and refrained himself as long as he could, that his wife and children should not perceive his distress ; but he could not be silent long, because that his trouble increased. Wherefore at length he brake his mind to his wife and children ; and thus he began to talk to them : "O my dear wife," said he, "and you the children of my bowels, I, your dear friend, am in myself undone by reason of a burden that lieth hard upon me. Moreover, I am for certain informed that this our city will be burned with fire from heaven ; in which fearful overthrow, both myself, with thee my wife, and you my sweet babes, shall miserably come to ruin, except (the which yet I see not) some way of escape can be found whereby we may be delivered." At this his relations were sore amazed — not for that they believed that what he had said to them was true, but because they thought that some frenzy distemper had got into his head. Therefore, it drawing towards night and they hoping that sleep might

settle his brains, with all haste they got him to bed. But the night was as troublesome to him as the day. Wherefore, instead of sleeping, he spent it in sighs and tears. So when the morning was come, they would know how he did. He told them, "Worse and worse." He also set to talking to them again; but they began to be hardened. They also thought to drive away his distemper by harsh and surly carriages to him. Sometimes they would deride, sometimes they would chide, and sometimes they would quite neglect him. Wherefore he began to retire himself to his chamber to pray for and pity them, and also to condole his own misery. He would also walk solitarily in the fields, sometimes reading, and sometimes praying; and thus for some days he spent his time.

Now I saw, upon a time, when he was walking in the fields, that he was, as he was wont, reading in his book, and greatly distressed in his mind; and as he read, he burst out, as he had done before, crying, "What shall I do to be saved?"

I saw also that he looked this way and that way, as if he would run. Yet he stood still because, as I perceived, he could not tell which way to go. I looked then, and saw a man named Evangelist coming to him, and asked, "Wherefore dost thou cry?" He answered, "Sir, I perceive, by the book in my hand, that I am condemned to die, and after that to come to judgment; and I find that I am not willing to do the first, nor able to do the second."

Then said Evangelist, "Why not willing to die, since this life is attended with so many evils?" The man answered, "Because I fear that this burden that is upon my back will sink me lower than the grave, and I shall fall into Tophet. And sir, if I be not fit to go to prison, I am not fit, I am sure, to go to judgment, and from thence to execution; and the thoughts of these things make me cry."

Then said Evangelist, "If this be thy condition, why standest thou still?" He answered, "Because I know not whither to go." Then he gave him a parchment roll; and there was written within, "Fly from the wrath to come."

Acts 13:30, 31

4 moth

The man therefore read it, and, looking upon Evangelist very carefully, said, "Whither must I fly?" Then said Evangelist (pointing with his finger over a very wide field), "Do you see yonder wicket-gate?" The man said, "No." Then said the other, "Do you see yonder shining light?" He said, "I think I do." Then said Evangelist, "Keep that light in your eye, and go up directly thereto. So shalt thou see the gate; at which, when thou knockest, it shall be told thee what thou shalt do."

So I saw in my dream that the man began to run. Now he had not run far from his own door but his wife and children, perceiving it, began to cry after him to return. But the man put his fingers in his ears and ran on, crying, "Life! life! eternal life!" So he looked not behind him, but fled towards the middle of the plain.

The neighbors also came out to see him run; and, as he ran, some mocked, others threatned, and some cried after him to return. Now among those that did so there were two that were resolved to fetch him back by force. The name of the one was Obstinate, and the name of the other Pliable. Now by this time the man was got a good distance from them; but, however, they were resolved to pursue him; which they did, and in a little time they overtook him. Then said the man, "Neighbors, wherefore are you come?" They said, "To persuade you to go back with us." But he said, "That can by no means be. You dwell," said he, "in the city of Destruction, the place also where I was born. I see it to be so; and dying there, sooner or later you will sink lower than the grave, into a place that burns with fire and brimstone. Be content, good neighbors, and go along with me."

OBST. What! said Obstinate, and leave our friends and our comforts behind us?

CHR. Yes, said Christian (for that was his name), because that all which you shall forsake is not worthy to be compared with a little of that that I am seeking to enjoy; and if you will go along with me, and hold it, you shall fare as I myself;

2 Cor. 5:17, 4:18. 4. Luke 14. Matt.

for there, where I go, is enough and to spare. Come away, and prove my words.

OBST. What are the things you seek, since you leave all the world to find them?

CHR. I seek an inheritance incorruptible, undefiled, and that fadeth not away; and it is laid up in heaven, and safe there, to be bestowed, at the time appointed, on them that diligently seek it. ² Read it so, if you will, in my book.

OBST. Tush! said Obstinate, away with your book. Will you go back with us or no?

CHR. No, not I, said the other, because I have laid my hand to the plough.

OBST. Come, then, neighbor Pliable: let us turn again, and go home without him. There is a company of these craz'd-headed coxcombs that, when they take a fancy by the end, are wiser in their own eyes than seven men that can render a reason. ³

PLI. Then said Pliable, Don't revile. If what the good Christian says is true, the things he looks after are better than ours. My heart inclines to go with my neighbor.

OBST. What! more fools still? Be ruled by me, and go back. Who knows whither such a brain-sick fellow will lead you? Go back, go back, and be wise.

CHR. Nay, but do thou come with thy neighbor Pliable. There are such things to be had which I spoke of, and many more glories besides. If you believe not me, read here in this book; and for the truth of what is exprest therein, behold, all is confirmed by the blood of Him that made it.

PLI. Well, neighbor Obstinate, said Pliable, I begin to come to a point. I intend to go along with this good man, and to cast in my lot with him. But, my good companion, do you know the way to this desired place?

CHR. I am directed by a man whose name is Evangelist to speed me to a little gate that is before us, where we shall receive instructions about the way.

PLI. Come, then, good neighbor; let us be going. Then they went both together.

OBST. And I will go back to my place, said Obstinate. I will be no companion of such misled, fantastical fellows.

Now I saw in my dream, that when Obstinate was gone back, Christian and Pliable went talking over the plain; and thus they began their discourse.

CHR. Come, neighbor Pliable, how do you do? I am glad you are persuaded to go along with me. Had even Obstinate himself but felt what I have felt of the powers and terrors of what is yet unseen, he would not thus lightly have given us the back.

PLI. Come, neighbor Christian, since there is none but us two here, tell me now further what the things are, and how to be enjoyed, whither we are going.

CHR. I can better conceive of them with my mind than speak of them with my tongue; but yet, since you are desirous to know, I will read of them in my book.

PLI. And do you think that the words of your book are certainly true?

CHR. Yes, verily; for it was made by Him that cannot lie.

PLI. Well said. What things are they?

CHR. There is an endless kingdom to be inhabited, and everlasting life to be given us, that we may inhabit that kingdom for ever.

PLI. Well said; and what else?

CHR. There are crowns of glory to be given us, and garments that will make us shine like the sun in the firmament of heaven.

PLI. This is very pleasant; and what else?

CHR. There shall be no more crying, nor sorrow; for he that is owner of the place will wipe all tears from our eyes.

PLI. And what company shall we have there?

CHR. There we shall be with seraphims and cherubims,⁵ creatures that will dazzle your eyes to look on them. There also you shall meet with thousands and ten thousands that have gone before us to that place. None of them are hurtful, but loving and holy, every one walking in the sight of God,

and standing in his presence with acceptance for ever. In a word, there we shall see the elders with their golden crowns ; there we shall see the holy virgins with their golden harps ; there we shall see men that by the world were cut in pieces, burnt in flames, eaten of beasts, drowned in the seas, for the love that they bare to the Lord of the place, all well, and clothed with immortality as with a garment.

— PLI. The hearing of this is enough to ravish one's heart. But are these things to be enjoyed ? How shall we get to be sharers thereof ?

CHR. The Lord, the governor of the country, hath recorded that in this book, the substance of which is, if we be truly willing to have it, he will bestow it upon us freely.

PLI. Well, my good companion, glad am I to hear of these things. Come on ; let us mend our pace.

CHR. I cannot go so fast as I would, by reason of this burden that is on my back.

Now I saw in my dream, that just as they had ended this talk, they drew nigh to a very miry slough that was in the midst of the plain ; and they, being heedless, did both fall suddenly into the bog. The name of the slough was Despond. Here, therefore, they wallowed for a time, being grievously bedaubed with the dirt ; and Christian, because of the burden that was on his back, began to sink in the mire.

PLI. Then said Pliable, Ah ! neighbor Christian, where are you now ?

CHR. Truly, said Christian, I do not know.

PLI. At this Pliable began to be offended, and angerly said to his fellow, Is this the happiness you have told me all this while of ? If we have such ill speed at our first setting out, what may we expect 'twixt this and our journey's end ? May I get out again with my life, you shall possess the brave country alone for me. And with that he gave a desperate struggle or two, and got out of the mire on that side of the slough which was next to his own house. So away he went, and Christian saw him no more.

Wherefore Christian was left to tumble in the Slough of

Despond alone. But still he endeavored to struggle to that side of the slough that was still further from his own house, and next to the wicket-gate ; the which he did, but could not get out because of the burden that was upon his back. But I beheld in my dream that a man came to him, whose name was Help, and asked him what he did there.

CHR. Sir, said Christian, I was bid go this way by a man called Evangelist, who directed me also to yonder gate, that I might escape the wrath to come. And as I was going thither, I fell in here.

HELP. But why did you not look for the steps ?

CHR. Fear followed me so hard that I fled the next way, and fell in.

HELP. Then said he, Give me thine hand. So he gave him his hand, and he drew him out, and set him upon sound ground, and bid him go on his way.

Then I stepped to him that pluckt him out, and said, "Sir, wherefore, since over this place is the way from the city of Destruction to yonder gate, is it that this plat is not mended, that poor travellers might go thither with more security ?" And he said unto me, "This miry slough is such a place as cannot be mended. It is the descent whither the scum and filth that attends conviction for sin doth continually run ; and therefore it is called the Slough of Despond. For still, as the sinner is awakened about his lost condition, there ariseth in his soul many fears and doubts, and discouraging apprehensions, which all of them get together, and settle in this place ; and this is the reason of the badness of this ground.

"It is not the pleasure of the King that this place should remain so bad. His laborers also have, by the direction of his Majesty's surveyors, been for above this sixteen hundred years employed about this patch of ground, if perhaps it might have been mended. Yea, and to my knowledge," said he, "there hath been swallowed up at least twenty thousand cart-loads, yea, millions of wholesome instructions, that have at all seasons been brought from all places of the King's dominions (and they that can tell say they are the best ma

terials to make good ground of the place), if so be it might have been mended ; but it is the Slough of Despond still, and so will be when they have done what they can.

“True, there are, by the direction of the Lawgiver, certain good and substantial steps placed even through the very midst of this slough ; but at such time as this place doth much spew out its filth, as it doth against change of weather, these steps are hardly seen ; or, if they be, men through the dizziness of their heads step besides, and then they are bemired to purpose, notwithstanding the steps be there. But the ground is good when they are once got in at the gate.”

Now I saw in my dream, that by this time Pliable was got home to his house. So his neighbors came to visit him ; and some of them called him wise man for coming back, and some called him fool for hazarding himself with Christian. Others again did mock at his cowardliness, saying, “Surely, since you began to venture, I would not have been so base to have given out for a few difficulties.” So Pliable sat sneaking among them. But at last he got more confidence ; and then they all turned their tales, and began to deride poor Christian behind his back. And thus much concerning Pliable.

Now as Christian was walking solitarily by himself, he espied one afar off come crossing over the field to meet him ; and their hap was to meet just as they were crossing the way of each other. The gentleman's name that met him was Mr. Worldly Wiseman. He dwelt in the town of Carnal Policy, a very great town, and also hard by from whence Christian came. This man, then, meeting with Christian, and having some inkling of him (for Christian's setting forth from the city of Destruction was much noised abroad, not only in the town where he dwelt, but also it began to be the town-talk in some other places) — Master Worldly Wiseman, therefore, having some guess of him, by beholding his laborious going, by observing his sighs and groans, and the like, began thus to enter into some talk with Christian.

WORLD. How now, good fellow ? Whither away after this burdened manner ?

CHR. A burdened manner indeed, as ever I think poor creature had. And whereas you ask me whither away, I tell you, sir, I am going to yonder wicket-gate before me; for there, as I am informed, I shall be put into a way to be rid of my heavy burden.

WORLD. Hast thou a wife and children?

CHR. Yes; but I am so laden with this burden that I cannot take that pleasure in them as formerly. Methinks I am as if I had none.

WORLD. Wilt thou harken to me, if I give thee counsel?

CHR. If it be good, I will; for I stand in need of good counsel.

WORLD. I would advise thee, then, that thou with all speed get thyself rid of thy burden; for thou wilt never be settled in thy mind till then. Nor canst thou enjoy the benefits of the blessings which God hath bestowed upon thee till then.

CHR. That is that which I seek for, even to be rid of this heavy burden. But get it off myself I cannot; nor is there a man in our country that can take it off my shoulders. Therefore I am going this way, as I told you, that I may be rid of my burden.

WORLD. Who bid thee go this way to be rid of thy burden?

CHR. A man that appeared to me to be a very great and honorable person. His name, as I remember, is Evangelist.

WORLD. I beshrew him for his counsel. There is not a more dangerous and troublesome way in the world than is that unto which he hath directed thee; and that thou shalt find, if thou wilt be ruled by his counsel. Thou hast met with something, as I perceive, already; for I see the dirt of the Slough of Despond is upon thee; but that slough is the beginning of the sorrows that do attend those that go on in that way. Hear me; I am older than thou. Thou art like to meet with, in the way which thou goest, wearisomeness, painfulness, hunger, perils, nakedness, sword, lions, dragons, darkness and, in a word, death, and what not. These things are certainly true, having been confirmed by many testimonies.

And why should a man so carelessly cast away himself, by giving heed to a stranger?

CHR. Why, sir, this burden upon my back is more terrible to me than all these things which you have mentioned. Nay, methinks I care not what I meet with in the way, so be I can also meet with deliverance from my burden.

WORLD. How camest thou by the burden at first?

CHR. By reading this book in my hand.

WORLD. I thought so; and it is happened unto thee as to other weak men, who, meddling with things too high for them, do suddenly fall into thy distractions; which distractions do not only unman men, as thine I perceive has done thee, but they run them upon desperate ventures to obtain they know not what.

CHR. I know what I would obtain; it is ease from my heavy burden.

WORLD. But why wilt thou seek for ease this way, seeing so many dangers attend it? especially since (hadst thou but patience to hear me) I could direct thee to the obtaining of what thou desirest, without the dangers that thou in this way wilt run thyself into. Yea, and the remedy is at hand. Besides, I will add that instead of those dangers thou shalt meet with much safety, friendship, and content.

CHR. Pray, sir, open this secret to me.

WORLD. Why, in yonder village (the village is named Morality) there dwells a gentleman whose name is Legality, a very judicious man, and a man of a very good name, that has skill to help men off with such burdens as thine are from their shoulders. Yea, to my knowledge, he hath done a great deal of good this way. Aye, and besides, he hath skill to cure those that are somewhat crazed in their wits with their burdens. To him, as I said, thou mayest go, and be helped presently. His house is not quite a mile from this place; and, if he should not be at home himself, he hath a pretty young man to his son, whose name is Civility, that can do it, to speak on, as well as the old gentleman himself. There, I say, thou mayest be eased of thy burden; and if thou art not minded to go back

to thy former habitation (as indeed I would not wish thee), thou mayest send for thy wife and children to thee to this village, where there are houses now stand empty, one of which thou mayest have at reasonable rates. Provision is there also cheap and good ; and that which will make thy life the more happy is to be sure there thou shalt live by honest neighbors, in credit and good fashion.

Now was Christian somewhat at a stand ; but presently he concluded, If this be true which this gentleman hath said, my wisest course is to take his advice ; and with that he thus farther spoke.

CHR. Sir, which is my way to this honest man's house ?

WORLD. Do you see yonder high hill ?

CHR. Yes, very well.

WORLD. By that hill you must go, and the first house you come at is his.

So Christian turned out of his way to go to Mr. Legality's house for help ; but, behold, when he was got now hard by the hill, it seemed so high, and also that side of it that was next the way-side did hang so much over, that Christian was afraid to venture further, lest the hill should fall on his head. Wherefore there he stood still, and wotted not what to do. Also his burden now seemed heavier to him than while he was in his way. There came also flashes of fire out of the hill, that made Christian afraid that he should be burned. Here, therefore, he sweat and did quake for fear. And now he began to be sorry that he had taken Mr. Worldly Wiseman's counsel ; and with that he saw Evangelist coming to meet him, at the sight also of whom he began to blush for shame. So Evangelist drew nearer and nearer ; and, coming up to him, he looked upon him with a severe and dreadful countenance, and thus began to reason with Christian.

EVAN. What doest thou here, Christian ? said he ; at which words Christian knew not what to answer ; wherefore at present he stood speechless before him. Then said Evangelist farther, Art not thou the man that I found crying without the walls of the city of Destruction ?

CHR. Yes, dear sir, I am the man.

EVAN. Did not I direct thee the way to the little wicket-gate ?

CHR. Yes, dear sir, said Christian.

EVAN. How is it, then, that thou art so quickly turned aside ? For thou art now out of the way.

CHR. I met with a gentleman so soon as I had got over the Slough of Despond, who persuaded me that I might, in the village before me, find a man that could take off my burden.

EVAN. What was he ?

CHR. He looked like a gentleman, and talked much to me, and got me at last to yield. So I came hither ; but when I beheld this hill, and how it hangs over the way, I suddenly made a stand, lest it should fall on my head.

EVAN. What said that gentleman to you ?

CHR. Why, he asked me whither I was going ; and I told him.

EVAN. And what said he then ?

CHR. He asked me if I had a family ; and I told him. But, said I, I am so loaden with the burden that is on my back, that I cannot take pleasure in them as formerly.

EVAN. And what said he then ?

CHR. He bid me with speed get rid of my burden ; and I told him 't was ease that I sought. And, said I, I am therefore going to yonder gate, to receive further direction how I may get to the place of deliverance. So he said that he would show me a better way, and short, not so attended with difficulties as the way, sir, that you set me in ; which way, said he, will direct you to a gentleman's house that hath skill to take off these burdens. So I believed him, and turned out of that way into this, if haply I might be soon eased of my burden. But when I came to this place, and beheld things as they are, I stopped, for fear, as I said, of danger. But I now know not what to do.

EVAN. Then said Evangelist, Stand still a little, that I may show thee the words of God. So he stood trembling. Then said Evangelist, " See that ye refuse not Him that speaketh ;

for if they escaped not who refused him that spake on earth, much more shall not we escape, if we turn away from Him that speaketh from heaven." He said, moreover, "Now the just shall live by faith; but if any man draws back, my soul shall have no pleasure in him." He also did thus apply them: Thou art the man that art running into this misery. Thou hast begun to reject the counsel of the Most High, and to draw back thy foot from the way of peace, even almost to the hazarding of thy perdition.

Then Christian fell down at his foot as dead, crying, Woe is me, for I am undone! At the sight of which Evangelist caught him by the right hand, saying, "All manner of sin and blasphemies shall be forgiven unto men." "Be not faithless, but believing." Then did Christian again a little revive, and stood up trembling, as at first, before Evangelist.

Then Evangelist proceeded, saying, Give more earnest heed to the things that I shall tell thee of. I will now show thee who it was that deluded thee, and who 't was also to whom he sent thee. The man that met thee is one Worldly Wiseman, and rightly is he so called; partly because he savoreth only the doctrine of this world (therefore he always goes to the town of Morality to church), and partly because he loveth that doctrine best, for it saveth him from the cross. And because he is of this carnal temper, therefore he seeketh to pervert my ways, though right. Now there are three things in this man's counsel that thou must utterly abhor:

1. his turning thee out of the way,
2. his laboring to render the cross odious to thee,
3. and his setting thy feet in that way that leadeth unto the administration of death.

† First, thou must abhor his turning thee out of the way, yea, and thine own consenting thereto; because this is to reject the counsel of God for the sake of the counsel of a Worldly Wiseman. The Lord says, "Strive to enter in at the strait gate," the gate to which I send thee; "for strait is the gate that leadeth unto life, and few there be that find it." From this little wicket-gate, and from the way thereto, hath

this wicked man turned thee, to the bringing of thee almost to destruction. Hate, therefore, his turning thee out of the way, and abhor thyself for hearkening to him.

Secondly, thou must abhor his laboring to render the cross odious unto thee ; for thou art to prefer it before the treasures in Egypt. Besides, the King of glory hath told thee that he that will save his life shall lose it. And he that comes after him, and hates not his father, and mother, and wife, and children, and brethren, and sisters, yea, and his own life also, he cannot be my disciple. I say, therefore, for a man to labor to persuade thee that that shall be thy death without which the truth hath said thou canst not have eternal life, this doctrine thou must abhor.

Thirdly, thou must hate his setting of thy feet in the way that leadeth to the ministration of death. And for this thou must consider to whom he sent thee, and also how unable that person was to deliver thee from thy burden.

He to whom thou wast sent for ease, being by name Legality, is the son of the bond-woman which now is, and is in bondage with her children, and is, in a mystery, this Mount Sinai, which thou hast feared will fall on thy head. Now if she with her children are in bondage, how canst thou expect by them to be made free ? This Legality, therefore, is not able to set thee free from thy burden. No man was as yet ever rid of his burden by him ; no, nor ever is like to be. Ye cannot be justified by the works of the law ; for by the deeds of the law no man living can be rid of his burden. Therefore Mr. Worldly Wiseman is an alien, and Mr. Legality is a cheat ; and, for his son Civility, notwithstanding his simpering looks, he is but an hypocrite, and cannot help thee. Believe me, there is nothing in all this noise that thou hast heard of these sottish men but a design to beguile thee of thy salvation, by turning thee from the way in which I had set thee. After this, Evangelist called aloud to the heavens for confirmation of what he had said ; and with that there came words and fire out of the mountain under which poor Christian stood, which made the hair of his flesh stand up. The words were thus

pronounced : "As many as are of the works of the law are under the curse ; for it is written, Cursed is every one that continueth not in all things which are written in the book of the law to do them."

Now Christian looked for nothing but death, and began to cry out lamentably, even cursing the time in which he met with Mr. Worldly Wiseman, still calling himself a thousand fools for hearkening to his counsel. He also was greatly ashamed to think that this gentleman's arguments, flowing only from the flesh, should have that prevalency with him as to cause him to forsake the right way. This done, he applied himself again to Evangelist in words and sense as follows.

CHR. Sir, what think you ? Is there hopes ? May I now go back, and go up to the wicket-gate ? Shall I not be abandoned for this, and sent back from thence ashamed ? I am sorry I have hearkened to this man's counsel ; but may my sin be forgiven.

EVAN. Then said Evangelist to him, Thy sin is very great ; for by it thou hast committed two evils. Thou hast forsaken the way that is good, to tread in forbidden paths. Yet will the man at the gate receive thee ; for he has good-will for men. Only, said he, take heed that thou turn not aside again, lest thou "perish from the way, when his wrath is kindled but a little."

Then did Christian address himself to go back ; and Evangelist, after he had kist him, gave him one smile, and bid him God speed. So he went on with haste ; neither spake he to any man by the way ; nor if any asked him, would he vouchsafe them an answer. He went like one that was all the while treading on forbidden ground, and could by no means think himself safe till again he was got into the way which he left to follow Mr. Worldly Wiseman's counsel. So, in process of time, Christian got up to the gate. Now over the gate there was written, "Knock, and it shall be opened unto you." He knocked, therefore, more than once or twice, saying,

“May I now enter here? Will he within
Open to sorry me, though I have been
An undeserving rebel? Then shall I
Not fail to sing his lasting praise on high.”

At last there came a grave person to the gate, named Goodwill, who asked who was there, and whence he came, and what he would have.

CHR. Here is a poor burdened sinner. I come from the city of Destruction, but am going to Mount Zion, that I may be delivered from the wrath to come. I would therefore, sir, since I am informed that by this gate is the way thither, know if you are willing to let me in.

GOOD. I am willing with all my heart, said he; and with that he opened the gate.

So when Christian was stepping in, the other gave him a pull. Then said Christian, What means that? The other told him, A little distance from this gate there is erected a strong castle, of which Beelzebub is the captain. From thence both he and them that are with him shoot arrows at those that come up to this gate, if haply they may die before they can enter in. Then said Christian, I rejoice and tremble. So when he was got in, the man of the gate asked him who directed him thither.

CHR. Evangelist bid me come hither and knock, as I did; and he said that you, sir, would tell me what I must do.

GOOD. An open door is set before thee; and no man can shut it.

CHR. Now I begin to reap the benefits of my hazards.

GOOD. But how is it that you came alone?

CHR. Because none of my neighbors saw their danger as I saw mine.

GOOD. Did any of them know of your coming?

CHR. Yes, my wife and children saw me at the first, and called after me to turn again. Also, some of my neighbors stood crying and calling after me to return; but I put my fingers in my ears, and so came on my way.

GOOD. But did none of them follow you, to persuade you to go back?

CHR. Yes, both Obstinate and Pliable; but when they saw that they could not prevail, Obstinate went railing back, but Pliable came with me a little way.

GOOD. But why did he not come through?

CHR. We indeed came both together until we came at the Slough of Despond, into the which we also suddenly fell. And then was my neighbor Pliable discouraged, and would not adventure further. Wherefore, getting out again on the side next to his own house, he told me I should possess the brave country alone for him. So he went his way, and I came mine; he after Obstinate, and I to this gate.

GOOD. Then said Goodwill, Alas, poor man! Is the celestial glory of so small esteem with him that he counteth it not worth running the hazards of a few difficulties to obtain it?

CHR. Truly, said Christian, I have said the truth of Pliable; and if I should also say all the truth of myself, it will appear there is no betterment 'twixt him and myself. 'Tis true, he went back to his own house; but I also turned aside to go into the way of death, being persuaded thereto by the carnal argument of one Mr. Worldly Wiseman.

GOOD. O, did he light upon you? What! he would have had you a sought for ease at the hands of Mr. Legality! They are both of them a very cheat. But did you take his counsel?

CHR. Yes, as far as I durst. I went to find out Mr. Legality, until I thought that the mountain that stands by his house would have fallen upon my head. Wherefore there was I forced to stop.

GOOD. That mountain has been the death of many, and will be the death of many more. 'Tis well you escaped being by it dasht in pieces.

CHR. Why truly I do not know what had become of me there, had not Evangelist happily met me again as I was musing in the midst of my dumps. But 't was God's mercy that he came to me again; for else I had never come hither.

But now I am come, such a one as I am, more fit indeed for death by that mountain than thus to stand talking with my Lord. But Oh what a favor is this to me, that yet I am admitted entrance here!

GOOD. We make no objections against any. Notwithstanding all that they have done before they come hither, they in nowise are cast out. And therefore, good Christian, come a little way with me, and I will teach thee about the way thou must go. Look before thee. Dost thou see this narrow way? That is the way thou must go. It was cast up by the patriarchs, prophets, Christ, and his apostles; and it is as straight as a rule can make it. This is the way thou must go.

CHR. But, said Christian, are there no turnings nor windings, by which a stranger may lose the way?

GOOD. Yes, there are many ways butt down upon this, and they are crooked and wide; but thus thou mayest distinguish the right from the wrong, the right only being straight and narrow.

Then I saw in my dream that Christian asked him further if he could not help him off with his burden that was upon his back. For as yet he had not got rid thereof; nor could he by any means get it off without help.

He told him, "As to thy burden, be content to bear it until thou comest to the place of deliverance; for there it will fall from thy back itself."

Then Christian began to gird up his loins, and to address himself to his journey. So the other told him that by that he was gone some distance from the gate, he would come at the house of the Interpreter, at whose door he should knock, and he would show him excellent things. Then Christian took his leave of his friend, and he again bid him God speed.

Then he went on till he came at the house of the Interpreter, where he knocked over and over. At last one came to the door, and asked who was there.

CHR. Sir, here is a traveller, who was bid by an acquaintance of the good man of this house to call here for my profit. I would therefore speak with the master of the house.

So he called for the master of the house, who, after a little time, came to Christian, and asked him what he would have.

CHR. Sir, said Christian, I am a man that am come from the city of Destruction, and am going to the Mount Zion ; and I was told by the man that stands at the gate at the head of this way, that if I called here you would show me excellent things, such as would be an help to me in my journey.

INTER. Then said the Interpreter, Come in. I will show thee that which will be profitable to thee. So he commanded his man to light the candle, and bid Christian follow him. So he had him into a private room, and bid his man open a door. The which when he had done, Christian saw the picture of a very grave person hang up against the wall ; and this was the fashion of it : it had eyes lifted up to heaven ; the best of books in his hand ; the law of truth was written upon his lips ; the world was behind his back ; it stood as if it pleaded with men ; and a crown of gold did hang over its head.

CHR. Then said Christian, What means this ?

INTER. The man whose picture this is, is one of a thousand. He can beget children, travail in birth with children, and nurse them himself when they are born. And whereas thou seest him with his eyes lift up to heaven, the best of books in his hand, and the law of truth writ on his lips, it is to show thee that his work is to know and unfold dark things to sinners, even as also thou seest him stand as if he pleaded with men. And whereas thou seest the world as cast behind him, and that a crown hangs over his head, that is to show thee that slighting and despising the things that are present, for the love that he hath to his Master's service, he is sure in the world that comes next to have glory for his reward. Now, said the Interpreter, I have showed thee this picture first, because the man whose picture this is, is the only man whom the Lord of the place whither thou art going hath authorized to be thy guide in all difficult places thou mayest meet with in the way. Wherefore take good heed to what I have showed thee, and bear well in thy mind what thou hast seen, lest in thy

journey thou meet with some that pretend to lead thee right, but their way goes down to death.

Then he took him by the hand, and led him into a very large parlor that was full of dust, because never swept; the which after he had reviewed a little while, the Interpreter called for a man to sweep. Now, when he began to sweep, the dust began so abundantly to fly about that Christian had almost therewith been choked. Then said the Interpreter to a damsel that stood by, "Bring hither the water, and sprinkle the room." The which when she had done, it was swept and cleansed with pleasure.

CHR. Then said Christian, What means this?

INTER. The Interpreter answered, This parlor is the heart of a man that was never sanctified by the sweet grace of the Gospel. The dust is his original sin and inward corruptions that have defiled the whole man. He that began to sweep at first is the law; but she that brought water and did sprinkle it is the Gospel. Now whereas thou sawest that so soon as the first began to sweep, the dust did so fly about that the room by him could not be cleansed, but that thou wast almost choked therewith, this is to show thee that the law, instead of cleansing the heart by its working from sin, doth revive, put strength into, and increase it in the soul, even as it doth discover and forbid it; for it doth not give power to subdue. Again, as thou sawest the damsel sprinkle the room with water, upon which it was cleansed with pleasure, this is to show thee that when the Gospel comes in the sweet and precious influences thereof to the heart, then, I say, even as thou sawest the damsel lay the dust by sprinkling the floor with water, so is sin vanquished and subdued and the soul made clean through the faith of it, and consequently fit for the King of glory to inhabit.

I saw moreover in my dream that the Interpreter took him by the hand, and had him into a little room, where sat two little children, each one in his chair. The name of the eldest was Passion, and the name of the other Patience. Passion seemed to be much discontent; but Patience was very quiet.

Then Christian asked, "What is the reason of the discontent of Passion?" The Interpreter answered, "The governor of them would have him stay for his best things till the beginning of the next year; but he will have all now; but Patience is willing to wait."

Then I saw that one came to Passion and brought him a bag of treasure, and poured it down at his feet. The which he took up, and rejoiced therein, and withal laughed Patience to scorn. But I beheld but a while, and he had lavished all away, and had nothing left him but rags.

CHR. Then said Christian to the Interpreter, Expound this matter more fully to me.

INTER. So he said, These two lads are figures; Passion of the men of this world, and Patience of the men of that which is to come. For, as here thou seest Passion will have all now, this year, that is to say, in this world, so are the men of this world; they must have all their good things now; they cannot stay till next year, that is, until the next world, for their portion of good. That proverb, "A bird in the hand is worth two in the bush," is of more authority with them than are all the divine testimonies of the good of the world to come. But as thou sawest that he had quickly lavished all away, and had presently left him nothing but rags, so will it be with all such men at the end of this world.

CHR. Then said Christian, Now I see that Patience has the best wisdom, and that upon many accounts: 1. because he stays for the best things; 2. and also because he will have the glory of his, when the other has nothing but rags.

INTER. Nay, you may add another, to wit, the glory of the next world will never wear out; but these are suddenly gone. Therefore Passion had not so much reason to laugh at Patience because he had his good things first as Patience will have to laugh at Passion because he had his best things last; for first must give place to last, because last must have his time to come, but last gives place to nothing, for there is not another to succeed. He, therefore, that hath his portion first must needs have a time to spend it; but he that hath his portion

last must have it lastingly. Therefore it is said of Dives, "In thy lifetime thou receivedest thy good things, and likewise Lazarus evil things ; but now he is comforted, and thou art tormented."

CHR. Then I perceive 't is not best to covet things that are now, but to wait for things to come.

INTER. You say truth : for the things that are seen are temporal ; but the things that are not seen are eternal. But though this be so, yet since things present and our fleshly appetite are such near neighbors one to another, and again because things to come and carnal sense are such strangers one to another, therefore it is that the first of these so suddenly fall into amity, and that distance is so continued between the second.

Then I saw in my dream that the Interpreter took Christian by the hand, and led him into a place where was a fire burning against a wall, and one standing by it always, casting much water upon it, to quench it. Yet did the fire burn higher and hotter.

Then said Christian, What means this ?

The Interpreter answered, This fire is the work of grace that is wrought in the heart. He that casts water upon it, to extinguish and put it out, is the Devil. But in that thou seest the fire notwithstanding burn higher and hotter, thou shalt also see the reason of that. So he had him about to the back side of the wall, where he saw a man with a vessel of oil in his hand, of the which he did also continually cast, but secretly, into the fire.

Then said Christian, What means this ?

The Interpreter answered, This is Christ, who continually, with the oil of his grace, maintains the work already begun in the heart ; by the means of which, notwithstanding what the Devil can do, the souls of his people prove gracious still. And in that thou sawest that the man stood behind the wall to maintain the fire, this is to teach thee that it is hard for the tempted to see how this work of grace is maintained in the soul.

I saw also that the Interpreter took him again by the hand and led him into a pleasant place, where was builded a stately palace, beautiful to behold, at the sight of which Christian was greatly delighted. He saw also upon the top thereof certain persons walking, who were clothed all in gold.

Then said Christian, May we go in thither ?

Then the Interpreter took him and led him up towards the door of the palace ; and behold at the door stood a great company of men, as desirous to go in, but durst not. There also sat a man at a little distance from the door, at a table-side, with a book and his inkhorn before him, to take the name of him that should enter therein. He saw also that in the doorway stood many men in armor to keep it, being resolved to do to the men that would enter what hurt and mischief they could. Now was Christian somewhat in amaze. At last, when every man started back for fear of the armed men, Christian saw a man of a very stout countenance come up to the man that sat there to write, saying, "Set down my name, sir." The which when he had done, he saw the man draw his sword, and put a helmet upon his head, and rush toward the door upon the armed men, who laid upon him with deadly force ; but the man, not at all discouraged, fell to cutting and hacking most fiercely. So after he had received and given many wounds to those that attempted to keep him out, he cut his way through them all, and pressed forward into the palace ; at which there was a pleasant voice heard from those that were within, even of those that walked upon the top of the palace, saying,

"Come in, come in.

Eternal glory thou shalt win."

So he went in, and was clothed with such garments as they. Then Christian smiled, and said, I think verily I know the meaning of this.

Now, said Christian, let me go hence. Nay, stay, said the Interpreter, till I have showed thee a little more ; and after that thou shalt go on thy way. So he took him by the hand

again and led him into a very dark room, where there sat a man in an iron cage.

Now the man, to look on, seemed very sad. He sat with his eyes looking down to the ground, his hands folded together, and he sighed as if he would break his heart. Then said Christian, What means this? At which the Interpreter bid him talk with the man.

Then said Christian to the man, What art thou? The man answered, I am what I was not once.

CHR. What wast thou once?

MAN. The man said, I was once a fair and flourishing professor, both in mine own eyes, and also in the eyes of others. I once was, as I thought, fair for the celestial city, and had then even joy at the thoughts that I should get thither.

CHR. Well, but what art thou now?

MAN. I am now a man of despair, and am shut up in it, as in this iron cage. I cannot get out; Oh now I cannot!

CHR. But how camest thou in this condition?

MAN. I left off to watch and be sober. I laid the reins upon the neck of my lusts. I sinned against the light of the word, and the goodness of God. I have grieved the Spirit, and he is gone. I tempted the devil, and he is come to me. I have provoked God to anger, and he has left me. I have so hardened my heart that I cannot repent.

Then said Christian to the Interpreter, But is there no hopes for such a man as this? Ask him, said the Interpreter.

CHR. Then said Christian, Is there no hope but you must be kept in the iron cage of despair?

MAN. No, none at all.

CHR. Why? the Son of the Blessed is very pitiful.

MAN. I have crucified him to myself afresh. I have despised his person; I have despised his righteousness; I have counted his blood an unholy thing; I have done despite to the Spirit of grace. Therefore I have shut myself out of all the promises; and there now remains to me nothing but threatenings, dreadful threatenings, faithful threatenings of certain

judgment and fiery indignation, which shall devour me as an adversary.

CHR. For what did you bring yourself into this condition ?

MAN. For the lusts, pleasures, and profits of this world ; in the enjoyment of which I did then promise myself much delight, but now every one of those things also bite me, and gnaw me like a burning worm.

CHR. But canst thou not now repent and turn ?

MAN. God hath denied me repentance. His word gives me no encouragement to believe. Yea, himself hath shut me up in this iron cage. Nor can all the men in the world let me out. Oh eternity ! eternity ! how shall I grapple with the misery that I must meet with in eternity ?

INTER. Then said the Interpreter to Christian, Let this man's misery be remembred by thee, and be an everlasting caution to thee.

CHR. Well, said Christian, this is fearful. God help me to watch and be sober, and to pray that I may shun the cause of this man's misery. Sir, is it not time for me to go on my way now ?

INTER. Tarry till I shall show thee one thing more, and then thou shalt go on thy way.

So he took Christian by the hand again, and led him into a chamber where there was one rising out of bed ; and as he put on his raiment, he shook and trembled. Then said Christian, Why doth this man thus tremble ? The Interpreter then bid him tell to Christian the reason of his so doing.

So he began, and said, "This night, as I was in my sleep, I dreamed, and behold the heavens grew exceeding black ; also it thundred and lightned in most fearful wise, that it put me into an agony. So I looked up in my dream, and saw the clouds rack at an unusual rate ; upon which I heard a great sound of a trumpet, and saw also a man sit upon a cloud, attended with the thousands of heaven. They were all in flaming fire ; also the heavens were on a burning flame. I heard then a voice, saying, ' Arise, ye dead, and come to judgment.' And with that the rocks rent, the graves opened, and the dead

that were therein came forth. Some of them were exceeding glad, and looked upward ; and some sought to hide themselves under the mountains. Then I saw the man that sat upon the cloud open the book, and bid the world draw near. Yet there was, by reason of a fierce flame that issued out and came before him, a convenient distance betwixt him and them, as betwixt the judge and the prisoners at the bar. I heard it also proclaimed to them that attended on the man that sat on the cloud, 'Gather together the tares, the chaff, and stubble, and cast them into the burning lake.' And with that the bottomless pit opened, just whereabout I stood ; out of the mouth of which there came, in an abundant manner, smoke, and coals of fire, with hideous noises. It was also said to the same persons, 'Gather my wheat into the garner.' And with that I saw many catch't up and carried away into the clouds ; but I was left behind. I also sought to hide myself, but I could not ; for the man that sat upon the cloud still kept his eye upon me. My sins also came into my mind, and my conscience did accuse me on every side. Upon this I awaked from my sleep."

CHR. But what was it that made you so afraid of this sight ?

MAN. Why, I thought that the day of judgment was come, and that I was not ready for it. But this frightened me most, that the angels gathered up several, and left me behind ; also the pit of hell opened her mouth just where I stood. My conscience too afflicted me ; and, as I thought, the Judge had always his eye upon me, showing indignation in his countenance.

Then said the Interpreter to Christian, "Hast thou considered all these things ?"

CHR. Yes, and they put me in hope and fear.

INTER. Well, keep all things so in thy mind that they may be as a goad in thy sides, to prick thee forward in the way thou must go. Then Christian began to gird up his loins, and to address himself to his journey. Then said the Interpreter, "The Comforter be always with thee, good Christian, to guide thee in the way that leads to the city." So Christian went on his way, saying,

“Here I have seen things rare and profitable,
Things pleasant, dreadful, things to make me stable
In what I have began to take in hand.
Then let me think on them, and understand
Wherefore they showed me was, and let me be
Thankful, O good Interpreter, to thee.”

Now I saw in my dream that the highway up which Christian was to go was fenced on either side with a wall, and that wall is called Salvation. Up this way, therefore, did burdened Christian run, but not without great difficulty, because of the load on his back.

He ran thus till he came at a place somewhat ascending ; and upon that place stood a cross, and a little below, in the bottom, a sepulchre. So I saw in my dream that just as Christian came up with the cross, his burden loosed from off his shoulders, and fell from off his back, and began to tumble, and so continued to do till it came to the mouth of the sepulchre, where it fell in, and I saw it no more.

Then was Christian glad and lightsome, and said with a merry heart, “He hath given me rest by his sorrow, and life by his death.” Then he stood still a while, to look and wonder ; for it was very surprising to him that the sight of the cross should thus ease him of his burden. He looked, therefore, and looked again, even till the springs that were in his head sent the waters down his cheeks. Now as he stood looking and weeping, behold, three shining ones came to him, and saluted him with, “Peace be to thee.” So the first said to him, “Thy sins be forgiven.” The second stript him of his rags, and clothed him with change of raiment. The third also set a mark on his forehead, and gave him a roll with a seal upon it, which he bid him look on as he ran, and that he should give it in at the celestial gate. So they went their way. Then Christian gave three leaps for joy, and went on singing,

“Thus far did I come loaden with my sin ;
Nor could aught ease the grief that I was in,

Till I came hither. What a place is this !
Must here be the beginning of my bliss ?
Must here the burden fall from off my back ?
Must here the strings that bound it to me crack ?
Blest cross ! blest sepulchre ! blest rather be
The Man that there was put to shame for me !”

I saw then in my dream that he went on thus, even until he came at a bottom, where he saw, a little out of the way, three men fast asleep, with fetters upon their heels. The name of the one was Simple, another Sloth, and the third Presumption.

Christian then seeing them lie in this case, went to them, if peradventure he might awake them, and cried, You are like them that sleep on the top of a mast ; for the Dead Sea is under you, a gulf that hath no bottom. Awake, therefore, and come away. Be willing also, and I will help you off with your irons. He also told them, If he that goeth about like a roaring lion comes by, you will certainly become a prey to his teeth. With that they lookt upon him, and began to reply in this sort. Simple said, “I see no danger” ; Sloth said, “Yet a little more sleep” ; and Presumption said, “Every fat must stand upon his own bottom.” And so they lay down to sleep again, and Christian went on his way.

Yet he was troubled to think that men in that danger should so little esteem the kindness of him that so freely offered to help them, both by awakening of them, counselling of them, and proffering to help them off with their irons. And as he was troubled thereabout, he espied two men come tumbling over the wall, on the left hand of the narrow way ; and they made up apace to him. The name of the one was Formalist, and the name of the other Hypocrisy. So, as I said, they drew up unto him, who thus entered with them into discourse.

CHR. Gentlemen, whence came you, and whither go you ?

FORM. AND HYP. We were born in the land of Vain-glory, and are going, for praise, to Mount Zion.

CHR. Why came you not in at the gate which standeth at

the beginning of the way? Know you not that it is written that "he that cometh not in by the door, but climbeth up some other way, the same is a thief and a robber"?

FORM. AND HYP. They said that to go to the gate for entrance was by all their countrymen counted too far about, and that therefore their usual way was to make a short cut of it, and to climb over the wall, as they had done.

CHR. But will it not be counted a trespass against the Lord of the city whither we are bound, thus to violate his revealed will?

FORM. AND HYP. They told him that as for that, he needed not to trouble his head thereabout; for what they did they had custom for, and could produce, if need were, testimony that would witness it for more than a thousand years.

CHR. But, said Christian, will it stand a trial at law?

FORM. AND HYP. They told him that custom, it being of so long a standing as above a thousand years, would doubtless now be admitted as a thing legal by an impartial judge. "And besides," said they, "so be we get into the way, what's matter which way we get in? If we are in, we are in. Thou art but in the way, who, as we perceive, came in at the gate; and we are also in the way, that came tumbling over the wall. Wherein now is thy condition better than ours?"

CHR. I walk by the rule of my Master; you walk by the rude working of your fancies. You are counted thieves already by the Lord of the way. Therefore I doubt you will not be found true men at the end of the way. You come in by yourselves without his direction, and shall go out by yourselves without his mercy.

To this they made him but little answer; only they bid him look to himself. Then I saw that they went on, every man in his way, without much conference one with another, save that these two men told Christian that as to laws and ordinances, they doubted not but they should as conscientiously do them as he. "Therefore," said they, "we see not wherein thou differest from us, but by the coat that is on thy

back, which was, as we trow, given thee by some of thy neighbors, to hide the shame of thy nakedness."

CHR. By laws and ordinances you will not be saved, since you came not in by the door. And as for this coat that is on my back, it was given me by the Lord of the place whither I go; and that, as you say, to cover my nakedness with. And I take it as a token of his kindness to me; for I had nothing but rags before. And besides, thus I comfort myself as I go. Surely, think I, when I come to the gate of the city, the Lord thereof will know me for good, since I have his coat on my back, a coat that he gave me freely in the day that he stript me of my rags. I have, moreover, a mark in my forehead, of which perhaps you have taken no notice, which one of my Lord's most intimate associates fixed there in the day that my burden fell off my shoulders. I will tell you, moreover, that I had then given me a roll sealed, to comfort me by reading as I go on the way. I was also bid to give it in at the celestial gate, in token of my certain going in after it, — all which things I doubt you want, and want them because you came not in at the gate.

To these things they gave him no answer; only they looked upon each other, and laughed. Then I saw that they went on all, save that Christian kept before, who had no more talk but with himself, and that sometimes sighingly, and sometimes comfortably. Also he would be often reading in the roll that one of the shining ones gave him, by which he was refreshed.

I beheld then, that they all went on till they came to the foot of the hill Difficulty, at the bottom of which there was a spring. There were also in the same place two other ways besides that which came straight from the gate. One turned to the left hand, and the other to the right, at the bottom of the hill; but the narrow way lay right up the hill, and the name of the going up the side of the hill is called Difficulty. Christian now went to the spring, and drank thereof to refresh himself, and then began to go up the hill, saying,

“The hill, though high, I covet to ascend.
The difficulty will not me offend;
For I perceive the way to life lies here.
Come, pluck up heart, let’s neither faint nor fear.
Better, though *difficult*, th’ right way to go,
Than wrong, though *easy*, where the end is woe.”

The other two also came to the foot of the hill. But when they saw that the hill was steep and high, and that there was two other ways to go, and supposing also that these two ways might meet again with that up which Christian went, on the other side of the hill, therefore they were resolved to go in those ways. Now the name of one of those ways was Danger, and the name of the other Destruction. So the one took the way which is called Danger, which led him into a great wood; and the other took directly up the way to Destruction, which led him into a wide field, full of dark mountains, where he stumbled and fell, and rose no more.

I looked then after Christian, to see him go up the hill, where I perceived he fell from running to going, and from going to clambering upon his hands and his knees, because of the steepness of the place. Now about the midway to the top of the hill was a pleasant arbor, made by the Lord of the hill for the refreshment of weary travellers. Thither, therefore, Christian got, where also he sat down to rest him. Then he pulled his roll out of his bosom, and read therein to his comfort. He also now began afresh to take a review of the coat or garment that was given to him as he stood by the cross. Thus pleasing himself awhile, he at last fell into a slumber, and thence into a fast sleep, which detained him in that place until it was almost night; and in his sleep his roll fell out of his hand. Now, as he was sleeping, there came one to him, and awaked him, saying, “Go to the ant, thou sluggard; consider her ways, and be wise.” And with that Christian suddenly started up, and sped him on his way, and went apace till he came to the top of the hill.

Now when he was got up to the top of the hill, there came two men running to meet him amain. The name of the one was

Timorous, and the other Mistrust. To whom Christian said, Sirs, what's the matter you run the wrong way? Timorous answered, that they were going to the city of Zion, and had got up that difficult place. "But," said he, "the further we go, the more danger we meet with. Wherefore we turned, and are going back again."

"Yes," said Mistrust, "for just before us lie a couple of lions in the way, whether sleeping or waking we know not; and we could not think, if we came within reach, but they would presently pull us in pieces."

CHR. Then said Christian, You make me afraid; but whither shall I fly to be safe? If I go back to mine own country, that is prepared for fire and brimstone, and I shall certainly perish there; if I can get to the celestial city, I am sure to be in safety there. I must venture. To go back is nothing but death; to go forward is fear of death, and life everlasting beyond it. I will yet go forward. So Mistrust and Timorous ran down the hill, and Christian went on his way. But thinking again of what he had heard from the men, he felt in his bosom for his roll, that he might read therein and be comforted; but he felt, and found it not. Then was Christian in great distress, and knew not what to do; for he wanted that which used to relieve him, and that which should have been his pass into the celestial city. Here, therefore, he began to be much perplexed, and knew not what to do. At last he bethought himself that he had slept in the arbor that is on the side of the hill; and, falling down upon his knees, he asked God forgiveness for that foolish fact, and then went back to look for his roll. But all the way he went back, who can sufficiently set forth the sorrow of Christian's heart? Sometimes he sighed, sometimes he wept, and oftentimes he chid himself for being so foolish to fall asleep in that place, which was erected only for a little refreshment for his weariness. Thus, therefore, he went back, carefully looking on this side and on that, all the way as he went, if happily he might find his roll, that had been his comfort so many times in his journey. He went thus till he came again within sight of the

arbor where he sat and slept ; (but that sight renewed his sorrow the more, by bringing again, even afresh, his evil of sleeping unto his mind.) Thus, therefore, he now went on, bewailing his sinful sleep, saying, O wretched man that I am, that I should sleep in the daytime ! that I should sleep in the midst of difficulty ! that I should so indulge the flesh as to use that rest for ease to my flesh which the Lord of the hill hath erected only for the relief of the spirits of pilgrims ! How many steps have I took in vain ! Thus it happened to Israel for their sin ; they were sent back again by the way of the Red Sea ; and I am made to tread those steps with sorrow which I might have trod with delight, had it not been for this sinful sleep. How far might I have been on my way by this time ! I am made to tread those steps thrice over which I needed not to have trod but once. Yea, now also I am like to be benighted ; for the day is almost spent. O that I had not slept !

Now by this time he was come to the arbor again, where for a while he sat down and wept ; but at last, as Christian would have it, looking sorrowfully down under the settle, there he espied his roll, the which he with trembling and haste caught up, and put it into his bosom. But who can tell how joyful this man was when he had gotten his roll again ! For this roll was the assurance of his life, and acceptance at the desired haven. Therefore he laid it up in his bosom, gave thanks to God for directing his eye to the place where it lay, and with joy and tears betook himself again to his journey. But Oh how nimbly did he go up the rest of the hill ! Yet before he got up, the sun went down upon Christian ; and this made him again recall the vanity of his sleeping to his remembrance ; and thus he again began to condole with himself : O thou sinful sleep ! how for thy sake am I like to be benighted in my journey ! I must walk without the sun ; darkness must cover the path of my feet ; and I must hear the noise of the doleful creatures, because of my sinful sleep ! Now also he remembered the story that Mistrust and Timorous told him of, how they were frightened with the sight of the lions. Then said Christian to himself again, These beasts range in the

night for their prey ; and if they should meet with me in the dark, how should I shift them ? How should I escape being by them torn in pieces ? Thus he went on his way. But while he was bewailing his unhappy miscarriage, he lift up his eyes, and behold there was a very stately palace before him, the name of which was Beautiful, and it stood by the highway-side.

So I saw in my dream that he made haste and went forward, that if possible he might get lodging there. Now before he had gone far, he entered into a very narrow passage, which was about a furlong off of the Porter's lodge ; and, looking very narrowly before him as he went, he espied two lions in the way. Now, thought he, I see the dangers that Mistrust and Timorous were driven back by. (The lions were chained ; but he saw not the chains.) Then he was afraid, and thought also himself to go back after them ; for he thought nothing but death was before him. But the Porter at the lodge, whose name is Watchful, perceiving that Christian made a halt, as if he would go back, cried unto him, saying, Is thy strength so small ? Fear not the lions ; for they are chained, and are placed there for trial of faith where it is, and for discovery of those that have none. Keep in the midst of the path, and no hurt shall come unto thee.

Then I saw that he went on, trembling for fear of the lions, but taking good heed to the directions of the Porter. He heard them roar ; but they did him no harm. Then he clapt his hands, and went on till he came and stood before the gate where the Porter was. Then said Christian to the Porter, Sir, what house is this ? and may I lodge here to-night ? The Porter answered, This house was built by the Lord of the hill ; and he built it for the relief and security of pilgrims. The Porter also asked whence he was, and whither he was going.

CHR. I am come from the city of Destruction, and am going to Mount Zion ; but because the sun is now set, I desire, if I may, to lodge here to-night.

PORT. What is your name ?

CHR. My name is now Christian ; but my name at the first

was Graceless. I came of the race of Japhet, whom God will persuade to dwell in the tents of Shem.

PORT. But how doth it happen that you come so late? The sun is set.

CHR. I had been here sooner, but that, wretched man that I am ! I slept in the arbor that stands on the hill-side. Nay, I had, notwithstanding that, been here much sooner, but that in my sleep I lost my evidence, and came without it to the brow of the hill ; and then feeling for it, and finding it not, I was forced with sorrow of heart to go back to the place where I slept my sleep, where I found it, and now I am come.

PORT. Well, I will call out one of the virgins of this place, who will, if she likes your talk, bring you in to the rest of the family, according to the rules of the house. So Watchful the Porter rang a bell, at the sound of which came out of the door of the house a grave and beautiful damsel, named Discretion, and asked why she was called.

The Porter answered, This man is in a journey from the city of Destruction to Mount Zion ; but, being weary and benighted, he asked me if he might lodge here to-night. So I told him I would call for thee, who, after discourse had with him, mayest do as seemeth thee good, even according to the law of the house.

Then she asked him whence he was and whither he was going ; and he told her. She asked him also how he got into the way ; and he told her. Then she asked him what he had seen and met with in the way ; and he told her. And at last she asked his name. So he said, It is Christian ; and I have so much the more a desire to lodge here to-night, because, by what I perceive, this place was built by the Lord of the hill for the relief and security of pilgrims. So she smiled, but the water stood in her eyes ; and after a little pause she said, " I will call forth two or three more of the family." So she ran to the door, and called out Prudence, Piety, and Charity, who, after a little more discourse with him, had him into the family ; and many of them, meeting him at the threshold of the house, said, " Come in, thou blessed of the

Lord. This house was built by the Lord of the hill on purpose to entertain such pilgrims in." Then he bowed his head, and followed them into the house. So when he was come in and set down, they gave him something to drink, and consented together that, until supper was ready, some of them should have some particular discourse with Christian, for the best improvement of time; and they appointed Piety, Prudence, and Charity to discourse with him. And thus they began.

PIETY. Come, good Christian, since we have been so loving to you to receive you into our house this night, let us, if perhaps we may better ourselves thereby, talk with you of all things that have happened to you in your pilgrimage.

CHR. With a very good will; and I am glad that you are so well disposed.

PIETY. What moved you at first to betake yourself to a pilgrim's life?

CHR. I was driven out of my native country by a dreadful sound that was in mine ears; to wit, that unavoidable destruction did attend me, if I abode in that place where I was.

PIETY. But how did it happen that you came out of your country this way?

CHR. It was as God would have it; for when I was under the fears of destruction, I did not know whither to go; but by chance there came a man, even to me, as I was trembling and weeping, whose name is Evangelist, and he directed me to the Wicket-gate, which else I should never have found, and so set me into the way that hath led me directly to this house.

PIETY. But did you not come by the house of the Interpreter?

CHR. Yes, and did see such things there, the remembrance of which will stick by me as long as I live, especially three things; to wit, how Christ, in despite of Satan, maintains his work of grace in the heart, how the man had sinned himself quite out of hopes of God's mercy, and also the dream of him that thought in his sleep the day of judgment was come.

PIETY. Why, did you hear him tell his dream?

CHR. Yes, and a dreadful one it was, I thought. It made my heart ache as he was telling of it; but yet I am glad I heard it.

PIETY. Was that all you saw at the house of the Interpreter?

CHR. No, he took me, and had me where he showed me a stately palace, and how the people were clad in gold that were in it, and how there came a venturous man, and cut his way through the armed men that stood in the door to keep him out, and how he was bid to come in and win eternal glory. Methought those things did ravish my heart. I would have stayed at that good man's house a twelvemonth, but that I knew I had farther to go.

PIETY. And what saw you else in the way?

CHR. Saw! Why, I went but a little further, and I saw One, as I thought in my mind, hang bleeding upon a tree; and the very sight of him made my burden fall off my back; for I groaned under a very heavy burden, but then it fell down from off me. It was a strange thing to me; for I never saw such a thing before. Yea, and while I stood looking up, (for then I could not forbear looking) three shining ones came to me. One of them testified that my sins were forgiven me; another stript me of my rags, and gave me this broidred coat which you see; and the third set the mark which you see in my forehead, and gave me this sealed roll (and with that he plucked it out of his bosom.)

PIETY. But you saw more than this, did you not?

CHR. The things that I have told you were the best. Yet some other matters I saw, as, namely, I saw three men, Simple, Sloth, and Presumption, lie asleep, a little out of the way, as I came, with irons upon their heels. But do you think I could awake them? I also saw Formality and Hypocrisy come tumbling over the wall, to go, as they pretended, to Zion; but they were quickly lost, even as I myself did tell them, but they would not believe. But, above all, I found it hard work to get up this hill, and as hard to come by the

lions' mouth ; and, truly, if it had not been for the good man the porter, that stands at the gate, I do not know but that, after all, I might have gone back again. But I thank God I am here, and thank you for receiving of me.

Then Prudence thought good to ask him a few questions, and desired his answer to them.

PRU. Do you not think sometimes of the country from whence you came ?

CHR. Yes, but with much shame and detestation. Truly, if I had been mindful of that country from whence I came out, I might have had opportunity to have returned ; but now I desire a better country, that is, a heavenly one.

PRU. Do you not yet bear away with you some of the things that then you were conversant withal ?

CHR. Yes, but greatly against my will ; especially my inward and carnal cogitations, with which all my countrymen, as well as myself, were delighted. But now all those things are my grief ; and might I but choose mine own things, I would choose never to think of those things more ; but when I would be a-doing of that which is best, that which is worst is with me.

PRU. Do you not find sometimes as if those things were vanquished which at other times are your perplexity ?

CHR. Yes, but that is but seldom ; but they are to me golden hours in which such things happens to me.

PRU. Can you remember by what means you find your annoyances at times as if they were vanquished ?

CHR. Yes, when I think what I saw at the cross, that will do it ; and when I look upon my broidered coat, that will do it ; and when I look into the roll that I carry in my bosom, that will do it ; and when my thoughts wax warm about whither I am going, that will do it.

PRU. And what is it that makes you so desirous to go to Mount Zion ?

CHR. Why, there I hope to see Him alive that did hang dead on the cross ; and there I hope to be rid of all those things that to this day are in me an annoyance to me. There

they say there is no death ; and there I shall dwell with such company as I like best. For, to tell you the truth, I love Him because I was by him eased of my burden ; and I am weary of my inward sickness. I would fain be where I shall die no more, and with the company that shall continually cry, *Holy, holy, holy.*

Then said Charity to Christian, Have you a family ; are you a married man ?

CHR. I have a wife and four small children.

CHAR. And why did you not bring them along with you ?

CHR. Then Christian wept, and said, Oh, how willingly would I have done it ! but they were all of them utterly averse to my going on pilgrimage.

CHAR. But you should have talked to them, and have endeavored to have shown them the danger of being behind.

CHR. So I did, and told them also what God had showed to me of the destruction of our city ; but I seemed to them as one that mocked, and they believed me not.

CHAR. And did you pray to God that he would bless your counsel to them ?

CHR. Yes, and that with much affection ; for you must think that my wife and poor children were very dear unto me.

CHAR. But did you tell them of your own sorrow, and fear of destruction ? for I suppose that destruction was visible enough to you.

CHR. Yes, over, and over, and over. They might also see my fears in my countenance, in my tears, and also in my trembling under the apprehension of the judgment that did hang over our heads ; but all was not sufficient to prevail with them to come with me.

CHAR. But what could they say for themselves, why they came not ?

CHR. Why, my wife was afraid of losing this world ; and my children were given to the foolish delights of youth. So, what by one thing, and what by another, they left me to wander in this manner alone.

CHAR. But did you not, with your vain life, damp all that


you, by words, used by way of persuasion to bring them away with you ?

CHR. Indeed, I cannot commend my life ; for I am conscious to myself of many failings therein. I know also that a man by his conversation may soon overthrow what by argument or persuasion he doth labor to fasten upon others for their good. Yet this I can say, I was very wary of giving them occasion, by any unseemly action, to make them averse to going on pilgrimage. Yea, for this very thing they would tell me I was too precise, and that I denied myself of things for their sakes in which they saw no evil. Nay, I think I may say that if what they saw in me did hinder them, it was my great tenderness in sinning against God, or of doing any wrong to my neighbor.

CHAR. Indeed, Cain hated his brother, because his own works were evil, and his brother's righteous ; and if thy wife and children have been offended with thee for this, they thereby show themselves to be implacable to good. Thou hast delivered thy soul from their blood.

Now I saw in my dream that thus they sat talking together until supper was ready. So when they had made ready, they sat down to meat. Now the table was furnished with fat things, and with wine that was well refined ; and all their talk at the table was about the Lord of the hill ; as, namely, about what HE had done, and wherefore HE did what HE did, and why HE had builded that house. (And by what they said I perceived that HE had been a great warrior, and had fought with and slain him that had the power of death, but not without great danger to himself, which made me love him the more.)

For, as they said, and as I believe, said Christian, he did it with the loss of much blood. But that which put glory of grace into all he did was that he did it out of pure love to his country. And besides, there were some of them of the household that said they had been and spoke with him since he did die on the cross ; and they have attested that they had it from his own lips that he is such a lover of poor pilgrims that the like is not to be found from the east to the west,



They moreover gave an instance of what they affirmed ; and that was, he had stript himself of his glory that he might do this for the poor, and that they heard him say and affirm that he would not dwell in the mountain of Zion alone. They said, moreover, that he had made many pilgrims princes, though by nature they were beggars born, and their original had been the dunghill.

Thus they discoursed together till late at night ; and after they had committed themselves to their Lord for protection, they betook themselves to rest. The pilgrim they laid in a large upper chamber, whose window opened towards the sun-rising. The name of the chamber was Peace, where he slept till break of day ; and then he awoke and sang,

“Where am I now ? Is this the love and care
Of Jesus for the men that pilgrims are,
Thus to provide that I should be forgiven
And dwell already the next door to heaven ?”

So in the morning they all got up ; and, after some more discourse, they told him that he should not depart till they had showed him the rarities of that place. And first they had him into the study, where they showed him records of the greatest antiquity, in which, as I remember my dream, they showed him first the pedigree of the Lord of the hill, that he was the Son of the Ancient of days, and came by that eternal generation. Here also was more fully recorded the acts that he had done, and the names of many hundreds that he had taken into his service ; and how he had placed them in such habitations that could neither by length of days, nor decays of nature, be dissolved.

Then they read to him some of the worthy acts that some of his servants had done ; as how they had subdued kingdoms, wrought righteousness, obtained promises, stopped the mouths of lions, quenched the violence of fire, escaped the edge of the sword, out of weakness were made strong, waxed valiant in fight, and turned to flight the armies of the aliens.

Then they read again, in another part of the records of the

house, where it was showed how willing their Lord was to receive into his favor any, even any, though they in time past had offered great affronts to his person and proceedings. Here also were several other histories of many other famous things, of all which Christian had a view, as of things both ancient and modern, together with prophecies and predictions of things that have their certain accomplishment, both to the dread and amazement of enemies, and the comfort and solace of pilgrims.

The next day they took him and had him into the armory, where they showed him all manner of furniture which their Lord had provided for pilgrims, as sword, shield, helmet, breast-plate, all-prayer, and shoes that would not wear out. And there was here enough of this to harness out as many men for the service of their Lord as there be stars in the heaven for multitude.

They also showed him some of the engines with which some of his servants had done wonderful things. They showed him Moses' rod, the hammer and nail with which Jael slew Sisera, the pitchers, trumpets, and lamps too, with which Gideon put to flight the armies of Midian. Then they showed him the ox's goad wherewith Shamgar slew six hundred men. They showed him also the jawbone with which Samson did such mighty feats. They showed him, moreover, the sling and stone with which David slew Goliath of Gath, and the sword also with which their Lord will kill the man of sin in the day that he shall rise up to the prey. They showed him besides many excellent things, with which Christian was much delighted. This done, they went to their rest again.

Then I saw in my dream, that on the morrow he got up to go forwards; but they desired him to stay till the next day also; "and then," said they, "we will, if the day be clear, show you the Delectable Mountains," which, they said, would yet further add to his comfort, because they were nearer the desired haven than the place where at present he was. So he consented and staid. When the morning was up, they had him to the top of the house, and bid him look south. So he

did, and behold, at a great distance he saw a most pleasant mountainous country, beautified with woods, vineyards, fruits of all sorts, flowers also, with springs and fountains, very delectable to behold. Then he asked the name of the country. They said it was Immanuel's land ; "and it is as common," said they, "as this hill is, to and for all the pilgrims. And when thou comest there, from thence thou mayest see to the gate of the celestial city, as the shepherds that live there will make appear."

Now he bethought himself of setting forward ; and they were willing he should. "But first," said they, "let us go again into the armory." So they did ; and when he came there, they harnessed him from head to foot with what was of proof, lest perhaps he should meet with assaults in the way. He being therefore thus accoutred, walketh out with his friends to the gate ; and there he asked the porter if he saw any pilgrim pass by. Then the porter answered, Yes.

CHR. Pray, did you know him ? said he.

PORT. I asked his name ; and he told me it was Faithful.

CHR. Oh ! said Christian, I know him. He is my townsman, my near neighbor ; he comes from the place where I was born. How far do you think he may be before ?

PORT. He is got by this time below the hill.

CHR. Well, said Christian, good porter, the Lord be with thee, and add to all thy blessings much increase for the kindness that thou hast showed me.

Then he began to go forward ; but Discretion, Piety, Charity, and Prudence would accompany him down to the foot of the hill. So they went on together, reiterating their former discourses, till they came to go down the hill. Then said Christian, "As it was difficult coming up, so, so far as I can see, it is dangerous going down." "Yes," said Prudence, "so it is ; for it is an hard matter for a man to go down into the valley of Humiliation, as thou art now, and to catch no slip by the way. Therefore," said they, "we are come out to accompany thee down the hill." So he began to go down, but very warily. Yet he caught a slip or two.

Then I saw in my dream that these good companions, when Christian was gone down to the bottom of the hill, gave him a loaf of bread, a bottle of wine, and a cluster of raisins ; and then he went on his way.

But now, in this valley of Humiliation, poor Christian was hard put to it ; for he had gone but a little way before he espied a foul fiend coming over the field to meet him. His name is Apollyon. Then did Christian begin to be afraid, and to cast in his mind whether to go back or to stand his ground. But he considered again that he had no armor for his back, and therefore thought that to turn the back to him might give him greater advantage with ease to pierce him with his darts. Therefore he resolved to venture and stand his ground ; for, thought he, had I no more in mine eye than the saving of my life, 't would be the best way to stand.

So he went on, and Apollyon met him. Now the monster was hideous to behold. He was clothed with scales like a fish, and they are his pride. He had wings like a dragon, feet like a bear ; and out of his belly came fire and smoke, and his mouth was as the mouth of a lion. When he was come up to Christian, he beheld him with a disdainful countenance, and thus began to question him.

APOLLYON. Whence came you, and whither are you bound ?

CHR. I am come from the city of Destruction, which is the place of all evil, and am going to the city of Zion.

APOL. By this I perceive that thou art one of my subjects ; for all that country is mine, and I am the prince and god of it. How is it, then, that thou hast run away from thy king ? Were it not that I hope thou mayest do me more service, I would strike thee now at one blow to the ground.

CHR. I was, indeed, born in your dominions ; but your service was hard, and your wages such as a man could not live on ; for the wages of sin is death. Therefore, when I was come to years, I did, as other considerate persons do, look out if perhaps I might mend myself.

APOL. There is no prince that will thus lightly lose his subjects ; neither will I as yet lose thee ; but since 'thou com-

plainest of thy service and wages, be content to go back. What our country will afford I do here promise to give thee.

CHR. But I have let myself to another, even to the King of princes ; and how can I with fairness go back with thee ?

APOL. Thou hast done in this according to the proverb, changed a bad for a worse ; but it is ordinary for those that have professed themselves his servants, after a while to give him the slip and return again to me. Do thou so too, and all shall be well.

CHR. I have given him my faith, and sworn my allegiance to him. How, then, can I go back from this, and not be hanged as a traitor ?

APOL. Thou didst the same by me ; and yet I am willing to pass by all, if now thou wilt yet turn again and go back.

CHR. What I promised thee was in my nonage ; and besides, I count that the Prince under whose banner I now stand is able to absolve me, yea, and to pardon also what I did as to my compliance with thee. And besides, O thou destroying Apollyon, to speak truth, I like his service, his wages, his servants, his government, his company, and country, better than thine. Therefore leave off to persuade me further ; I am his servant, and I will follow him.

APOL. Consider again, when thou art in cool blood, what thou art like to meet with in the way that thou goest. Thou knowest that for the most part his servants come to an ill end, because they are transgressors against me and my ways. How many of them have been put to shameful deaths ! And besides, thou countest his service better than mine, whereas he never came yet from the place where he is, to deliver any that served him out of their hands ; but as for me, how many times, as all the world very well knows, have I delivered, either by power or fraud, those that have faithfully served me, from him and his, though taken by them ! And so I will deliver thee.

CHR. His forbearing at present to deliver them is on purpose to try their love, whether they will cleave to him to the end ; and as for the ill end thou sayest they come to, that is most glorious in their account. For, for present deliverance,

they do not much expect it ; for they stay for their glory, and then they shall have it when their Prince comes in his and the glory of the angels.

APOL. 'Thou hast already been unfaithful in thy service to him ; and how dost thou think to receive wages of him ?

CHR. Wherein, O Apollyon, have I been unfaithful to him ?

APOL. Thou didst faint at first setting out, when thou wast almost choked in the gulf of Despond. Thou didst attempt wrong ways to be rid of thy burden, whereas thou shouldest have stayed till thy Prince had taken it off. Thou didst sinfully sleep, and lose thy choice thing. Thou wast also almost persuaded to go back at the sight of the lions. And when thou talkest of thy journey, and of what thou hast heard and seen, thou art inwardly desirous of vainglory in all that thou sayest or doest.

CHR. All this is true, and much more which thou has left out ; but the Prince whom I serve and honor is merciful, and ready to forgive. But besides, these infirmities possessed me in thy country, for there I suckt them in ; and I have groaned under them, been sorry for them, and have obtained pardon of my Prince.

APOL. Then Apollyon broke out into a grievous rage, saying, I am an enemy to this Prince ; I hate his person, his laws, and people. I am come out on purpose to withstand thee.

CHR. Apollyon, beware what you do ; for I am in the King's highway, the way of holiness. Therefore take heed to yourself.

APOL. Then Apollyon straddled quite over the whole breadth of the way, and said, I am void of fear in this matter. Prepare thyself to die ; for I swear by my infernal den that thou shalt go no further. Here will I spill thy soul. And with that he threw a flaming dart at his breast ; but Christian had a shield in his hand, with which he caught it, and so prevented the danger of that.

Then did Christian draw, for he saw 't was time to bestir him ; and Apollyon as fast made at him, throwing darts as thick as hail, by the which, notwithstanding all that Christian could do to avoid it, Apollyon wounded him in his head, his

hand, and foot. This made Christian give a little back. Apollyon, therefore, followed his work amain ; and Christian again took courage, and resisted as manfully as he could. This sore combat lasted for above half a day, even till Christian was almost quite spent ; for you must know that Christian, by reason of his wounds, must needs grow weaker and weaker.

Then Apollyon, espying his opportunity, began to gather up close to Christian and, wrestling with him, gave him a dreadful fall ; and with that Christian's sword flew out of his hand. Then said Apollyon, I am sure of thee now ; and with that he had almost prest him to death, so that Christian began to despair of life. But, as God would have it, while Apollyon was fetching of his last blow, thereby to make a full end of this good man, Christian nimbly reached out his hand for his sword, and caught it, saying, Rejoice not against me, O mine enemy ; when I fall, I shall arise ; and with that gave him a deadly thrust, which made him give back, as one that had received his mortal wound. Christian, perceiving that, made at him again, saying, Nay, in all these things we are more than conquerors, through Him that loved us. And with that Apollyon spread forth his dragon's wings and sped him away, that Christian saw him no more.

In this combat no man can imagine, unless he had seen and heard, as I did, what yelling and hideous roaring Apollyon made all the time of the fight (He spake like a dragon) ; and on the other side, what sighs and groans burst from Christian's heart. I never saw him all the while give so much as one pleasant look, till he perceived he had wounded Apollyon with his two-edged sword. Then, indeed, he did smile, and look upward. But 't was the dreadfulest sight that ever I saw.

So when the battle was over, Christian said, I will here give thanks to Him that hath delivered me out of the mouth of the lion, to Him that did help me against Apollyon. And so he did, saying,

“Great Beelzebub, the captain of this fiend,
Designed my ruin. Therefore to this end

He sent him harness out ; and he, with rage
That hellish was, did fiercely me engage.
But blessed Michael helped me ; and I,
By dint of sword, did quickly make him fly.
Therefore to Him let me give lasting praise,
And thank and bless his holy name always."

Then there came to him a hand with some of the leaves of the tree of life, the which Christian took and applied to the wounds that he had received in the battle, and was healed immediately. He also sat down in that place to eat bread, and to drink of the bottle that was given him a little before. So, being refreshed, he addressed himself to his journey with his sword drawn in his hand ; for he said, I know not but some other enemy may be at hand. But he met with no other affront from Apollyon quite through this valley.

Now at the end of this valley was another, called the Valley of the Shadow of Death ; and Christian must needs go through it, because the way to the Celestial City lay through the midst of it. Now this valley is a very solitary place. The prophet Jeremiah thus describes it : " A wilderness, a land of deserts and of pits, a land of drought, and of the Shadow of Death, a land that no man " (but a Christian) " passeth through, and where no man dwelt." Now here Christian was worse put to it than in his fight with Apollyon, as by the sequel you shall see.

I saw then in my dream that when Christian was got to the borders of the Shadow of Death, there met him two men, children of them that brought up an evil report of the good land, making haste to go back ; to whom Christian spake as follows.

CHR. Whither are you going ?

MEN. They said, Back, back ; and we would have you do so too, if either life or peace is prized by you.

CHR. Why, what's the matter ? said Christian.

MEN. Matter ! said they ; we were going that way as you are going, and went as far as we durst ; and indeed we were

almost past coming back, for, had we gone a little further, we had not been here to bring the news to thee.

CHR. But what have you met with ? said Christian.

MEN. Why, we were almost in the Valley of the Shadow of Death, but that by good hap we looked before us, and saw the danger before we came to it.

CHR. But what have you seen ? said Christian.

MEN. Seen ! why, the valley itself, which is as dark as pitch. We also saw there the hobgoblins, satyrs, and dragons of the pit. We heard also in that valley a continual howling and yelling, as of a people under unutterable misery, who there sat bound in affliction and irons ; and over that valley hangs the discouraging clouds of confusion. (Death also doth always spread his wings over it. In a word, it is every whit dreadful, being utterly without order.)

CHR. Then, said Christian, I perceive not yet, by what you have said, but that this is my way to the desired haven.

MEN. Be it thy way ; we will not choose it for ours.

So they parted, and Christian went on his way, but still with his sword drawn in his hand, for fear lest he should be assaulted.

I saw then in my dream, so far as this valley reached, there was on the right hand a very deep ditch. That ditch is it into which the blind have led the blind in all ages, and have both there miserably perished. Again, behold, on the left hand there was a very dangerous quag, into which, if even a good man falls, he can find no bottom for his foot to stand on. Into that quag King David once did fall, and had no doubt therein been smothered, had not He that is able pluckt him out.

The pathway was here also exceeding narrow, and therefore good Christian was the more put to it ; for when he sought, in the dark, to shun the ditch on the one hand, he was ready to tip over into the mire on the other ; also, when he sought to escape the mire, without great carefulness he would be ready to fall into the ditch. Thus he went on, and I heard him here sigh bitterly ; for besides the danger mentioned above, the pathway was here so dark that oftentimes, when he lift up his

foot to go forward, he knew not where, or upon what, he should set it next.

About the midst of this valley I perceived the mouth of hell to be ; and it stood also hard by the wayside. Now, thought Christian, what shall I do ? And ever and anon the flame and smoke would come out in such abundance, with sparks and hideous noises (things that cared not for Christian's sword, as did Apollyon before), that he was forced to put up his sword and betake himself to another weapon, called All-prayer. So he cried, in my hearing, O Lord, I beseech thee, deliver my soul. Thus he went on a great while. Yet still the flames would be reaching towards him ; also he heard doleful voices, and rushings to and fro, so that sometimes he thought he should be torn in pieces, or trodden down like mire in the streets. This frightful sight was seen, and these dreadful noises were heard by him for several miles together ; and coming to a place where he thought he heard a company of fiends coming forward to meet him, he stopt, and began to muse what he had best to do. Sometimes he had half a thought to go back ; then again he thought he might be half-way through the valley. He remembred also how he had already vanquished many a danger, and that the danger of going back might be much more than for to go forward. So he resolved to go on ; yet the fiends seemed to come nearer and nearer. But when they were come even almost at him, he cried out with a most vehement voice, I will walk in the strength of the Lord God. So they gave back, and came no further.

One thing I would not let slip. I took notice that now poor Christian was so confounded that he did not know his own voice ; and thus I perceived it. Just when he was come over against the mouth of the burning pit, one of the wicked ones got behind him, and stept up softly to him, and whisperingly suggested many grievous blasphemies to him, which he verily thought had proceeded from his own mind. This put Christian more to it than any thing that he met with before, even to think that he should now blaspheme Him that he loved so much before. Yet if he could have helped it, he

would not have done it ; but he had not the discretion either to stop his ears, or to know from whence those blasphemies came.

When Christian had travelled in this disconsolate condition some considerable time, he thought he heard the voice of a man, as going before him, saying, Though I walk through the Valley of the Shadow of Death, I will fear none ill ; for thou art with me. Then was he glad, and that for these reasons: first, because he gathered from thence that some who feared God were in this valley as well as himself ; secondly, for that he perceived God was with them, though in that dark and dismal state (and why not, thought he, with me ? though by reason of the impediment that attends this place, I cannot perceive it.) ; thirdly, for that he hoped, could he overtake them, to have company by and by. So he went on, and called to him that was before ; but he knew not what to answer, for that he also thought himself to be alone. And by and by the day broke. Then said Christian, “ He hath turned the shadow of death into the morning.”

Now, morning being come, he looked back, not out of desire to return, but to see by the light of the day what hazards he had gone through in the dark. So he saw more perfectly the ditch that was on the one hand, and the quag that was on the other ; also how narrow the way was which led betwixt them both. Also now he saw the hobgoblins, and satyrs, and dragons of the pit, but all afar off ; for after break of day they came not nigh ; yet they were discovered to him, according to that which is written, “ He discovereth deep things out of darkness, and bringeth out to light the shadow of death.”

Now was Christian much affected with his deliverance from all the dangers of his solitary way ; which dangers, though he feared them much before, yet he saw them more clearly now, because the light of the day made them conspicuous to him. And about this time the sun was rising, and this was another mercy to Christian ; for you must note that though the first part of the Valley of the Shadow of Death was dangerous, yet this second part, which he was yet to go, was, if possible, far

more dangerous ; for from the place where he now stood, even to the end of the valley, the way was all along set so full of snares, traps, gins, and nets here, and so full of pits, pitfalls, deep holes, and shelvings-down there, that had it now been dark, as it was when he came the first part of the way, had he had a thousand souls, they had in reason been cast away. But, as I said, just now the sun was rising. Then said he, "His candle shineth on my head ; and by his light I go through darkness."

In this light, therefore, he came to the end of the valley. Now I saw in my dream that at the end of the valley lay blood, bones, ashes, and mangled bodies of men, even of pilgrims that had gone this way formerly ; and, while I was musing what should be the reason, I espied a little before me a cave, where two giants, Pope and Pagan, dwelt in old times, by whose power and tyranny the men whose bones, blood, ashes, etc., lay there, were cruelly put to death. But by this place Christian went without much danger, whereat I somewhat wondered ; but I have learnt since that Pagan has been dead many a day ; and as for the other, though he be yet alive, he is by reason of age and also of the many shrewd brushes that he met with in his younger days grown so crazy and stiff in his joints that he can now do little more than sit in his cave's mouth, grinning at pilgrims as they go by, and biting his nails because he cannot come at them.

So I saw that Christian went on his way. Yet at the sight of the old man that sat in the mouth of the cave he could not tell what to think, especially because he spake to him, though he could not go after him, saying, You will never mend till more of you be burned. But he held his peace, and set a good face on 't, and so went by, and catcht no hurt. Then sang Christian.

"O world of wonders (I can say no less),
That I should be preserved in that distress
That I have met with here ! O blessed be
That hand that from it hath delivered me !
Dangers in darkness, devils, hell, and sin

Did compass me, while I this vale was in.
Yea, snares, and pits, and traps, and nets did lie
My path about, that worthless, silly I
Might have been catcht, entangled, and cast down.
But since I live, let JESUS wear the crown."

Now, as Christian went on his way, he came to a little ascent, which was cast up on purpose that pilgrims might see before them. Up there, therefore, Christian went; and, looking forward, he saw Faithful before him upon his journey. Then said Christian aloud, Ho, ho! so-ho! stay, and I will be your companion. At that Faithful looked behind him; to whom Christian cried again, Stay, stay, till I come up to you. But Faithful answered, No, I am upon my life; and the avenger of blood is behind me.

At this Christian was somewhat moved and, putting to all his strength, he quickly got up with Faithful, and did also overrun him; so the last was first. Then did Christian vain-gloriously smile, because he had gotten the start of his brother; but, not taking good heed to his feet, he suddenly stumbled and fell, and could not rise again until Faithful came up to help him.

Then I saw in my dream, they went very lovingly on together, and had sweet discourse of all things that had happened to them in their pilgrimage; and thus Christian began.

CHR. My honored and well-beloved brother Faithful, I am glad that I have overtaken you, and that God has so tempered our spirits that we can walk as companions in this so pleasant a path.

FAITH. I had thought, dear friend, to have had your company quite from our town, but you did get the start of me; wherefore I was forced to come thus much of the way alone.

CHR. How long did you stay in the city of Destruction before you set out after me on your pilgrimage?

FAITH. Till I could stay no longer; for there was great talk presently, after you were gone out, that our city would, in a short time, with fire from heaven be burned down to the ground.

CHR. What! did your neighbors talk so?

FAITH. Yes, 't was for a while in every body's mouth.

CHR. What! and did no more of them but you come out to escape the danger?

FAITH. Though there was, as I said, a great talk thereabout, yet I do not think they did firmly believe it; for in the heat of the discourse I heard some of them deridingly speak of you and of your desperate journey, for so they called this your pilgrimage. But I did believe, and do still, that the end of our city will be with fire and brimstone from above; and therefore I have made mine escape.

CHR. Did you hear no talk of neighbor Pliable?

FAITH. Yes, Christian, I heard that he followed you till he came at the Slough of Despond, where, as some said, he fell in; but he would not be known to have so done; but I am sure he was soundly bedabbled with that kind of dirt.

CHR. And what said the neighbors to him?

FAITH. He hath, since his going back, been had greatly in derision, and that among all sorts of people. Some do mock and despise him; and scarce will any set him on work. He is now seven times worse than if he had never gone out of the city.

CHR. But why should they be so set against him, since they also despise the way that he forsook?

FAITH. "Oh!" they say, "Hang him; he is a turncoat; he was not true to his profession!" I think God has stirred up even His enemies to hiss at him, and make him a proverb, because he hath forsaken the way.

CHR. Had you no talk with him before you came out?

FAITH. I met him once in the streets, but he leered away on the other side, as one ashamed of what he had done. So I spake not to him.

CHR. Well, at my first setting out I had hopes of that man; but now I fear he will perish in the overthrow of the city. For it has happened to him according to the true proverb. The dog is turned to his vomit again, and the sow that was washed to her wallowing in the mire.

FAITH. These are my fears of him too ; but who can hinder that which will be ?

CHR. Well, neighbor Faithful, said Christian, let us leave him, and talk of things that more immediately concern ourselves. Tell me now what you have met with in the way as you came ; for I know you have met with some things, or else it may be writ for a wonder.

FAITH. I escaped the slough that I perceived you fell into, and got up to the gate without that danger. Only I met with one whose name was Wanton, who had like to have done me a mischief.

CHR. 'T was well you escaped her net. Joseph was hard put to it by her, and he escaped her as you did ; but it had like to have cost him his life. But what did she do to you ?

FAITH. You cannot think, but that you know something, what a flattering tongue she had. She lay at me hard to turn aside with her, promising me all manner of content.

CHR. Nay, she did not promise you the content of a good conscience.

FAITH. You know that I mean all carnal and fleshly content.

CHR. Thank God that you escaped her ! The abhorred of the Lord shall fall into her ditch.

FAITH. Nay, I know not whether I did wholly escape her or no.

CHR. Why, I trow you did not consent to her desires ?

FAITH. No, not to defile myself ; for I remembred an old writing that I had seen, which saith, " Her steps take hold of hell." So I shut mine eyes, because I would not be bewitched with her looks. Then she railed on me, and I went my way.

CHR. Did you meet with no other assault as you came ?

FAITH. When I came to the foot of the hill called Difficulty, I met with a very aged man, who asked me what I was, and whither bound. I told him that I was a pilgrim, going to the Celestial City. Then said the old man, Thou lookest like an honest fellow. Wilt thou be content to dwell with me for the wages that I shall give thee ? Then I asked his name, and

where he dwelt. He said his name was Adam the First, and that he dwelt in the town of Deceit. I asked him then what was his work, and what the wages that he would give. He told me that his work was many delights, and his wages, that I should be his heir at last. I further asked him what house he kept, and what other servants he had. So he told me that his house was maintained with all the dainties in the world, and that his servants were those of his own begetting. Then I asked how many children he had. He said that he had but three daughters, the Lust of the Flesh, the Lust of the Eyes, and the Pride of Life, and that I should marry them if I would. Then I asked how long time he would have me live with him ; and he told me, as long as he lived himself.

CHR. Well, and what conclusion came the old man and you to at last ?

FAITH. Why, at first I found myself somewhat inclinable to go with the man, for I thought he spake very fair ; but, looking in his forehead as I talked with him, I saw there written, "Put off the old man with his deeds."

CHR. And how then ?

FAITH. Then it came burning hot into my mind, whatever he said, and however he flattered, when he got me home to his house he would sell me for a slave. So I bid him forbear to talk ; for I would not come near the door of his house. Then he reviled me, and told me that he would send such a one after me that should make my way bitter to my soul. So I turned to go away from him ; but just as I turned myself to go thence, I felt him take hold of my flesh, and give me such a deadly twitch back that I thought he had pulled part of me after himself. This made me cry, "O wretched man !" So I went on my way up the hill.

Now, when I had got about half-way up, I looked behind me, and saw one coming after me, swift as the wind. So he overtook me just about the place where the settle stands.

CHR. Just there, said Christian, did I sit down to rest me ; but, being overcome with sleep, I there lost this roll out of my bosom.

FAITH. But good brother, hear me out. So soon as the man overtook me, he was but a word and a blow ; for down he knockt me, and laid me for dead. But when I was a little come to myself again, I asked him wherefore he served me so. He said, because of my secret inclining to Adam the First. And with that he strook me another deadly blow on the breast, and beat me down backward. So I lay at his foot as dead as before. So when I came to myself again, I cried him mercy ; but he said, I know not how to show mercy, and with that he knockt me down again. He had doubtless made an end of me, but that one came by and bid him forbear.

CHR. Who was that that bid him forbear ?

FAITH. I did not know him at first ; but as he went by I perceived the holes in his hands and in his side. Then I concluded that he was our Lord. So I went up the hill.

CHR. That man that overtook you was Moses. He spareth none ; neither knoweth he how to show mercy to those that transgress his law.

FAITH. I know it very well ; it was not the first time that he has met with me. 'T was he that came to me when I dwelt securely at home, and that told me that he would burn my house over my head if I staid there.

CHR. But did you not see the house that stood there on the top of the hill on the side of which Moses met you ?

FAITH. Yes, and the lions too, before I came at it. But, for the lions, I think they were asleep, for it was about noon ; and because I had so much of the day before me, I passed by the porter, and came down the hill.

CHR. He told me, indeed, that he saw you go by ; but I wish you had called at the house, for they would have showed you so many rarities that you would scarce have forgot them to the day of your death. But pray tell me, did you meet nobody in the Valley of Humility ?

FAITH. Yes, I met with one Discontent, who would willingly have persuaded me to go back again with him. His reason was, for that the valley was altogether without honor. He told me, moreover, that there to go was the way to

disobey all my friends, as Pride, Arrogancy, Self-Conceit, Worldly Glory, with others, who he knew, as he said, would be very much offended if I made such a fool of myself as to wade through this valley.

CHR. Well, and how did you answer him ?

FAITH. I told him that although all these that he named might claim kindred of me, and that rightly (for indeed they were my relations according to the flesh), yet since I became a pilgrim they have disowned me, and I also have rejected them ; and therefore they were to me now no more than if they had never been of my lineage. I told him, moreover, that as to this valley, he had quite misrepresented the thing ; for before honor is humility, and a haughty spirit before a fall. Therefore, said I, I had rather go through this valley to the honor that was so accounted by the wisest, than choose that which he esteemed most worthy our affections.

CHR. Met you with nothing else in that valley ?

FAITH. Yes, I met with Shame ; but of all the men that I met with in my pilgrimage, he, I think, bears the wrong name. The others would be said nay, after a little argumentation, and somewhat else ; but this bold-faced Shame would never have done.

CHR. Why, what did he say to you ?

FAITH. What ? why, he objected against religion itself. He said it was a pitiful, low, sneaking business for a man to mind religion. He said that a tender conscience was an unmanly thing, and that for a man to watch over his words and ways, so as to tie up himself from that hectoring liberty that the brave spirits of the times accustom themselves unto, would make him the ridicule of the times. He objected also that but few of the mighty, rich, or wise, were ever of my opinion ; nor any of them, neither, before they were persuaded to be fools, and to be of a voluntary fondness to venture the loss of all for nobody else knows what. He moreover objected the base and low estate and condition of those that were chiefly the pilgrims of the times in which they lived, also their ignorance and want of understanding in all natural science. Yea,

he did hold me to it at that rate also about a great many more things than here I relate ; as that it was a shame to sit whining and mourning under a sermon, and a shame to come sighing and groaning home, that it was a shame to ask my neighbor forgiveness for petty faults, or to make restitution where I had taken from any. He said also that religion made a man grow strange to the great, because of a few vices, which he called by finer names, and made him own and respect the base, because of the same religious fraternity ; and is not this, said he, a shame ?

CHR. And what did you say to him ?

FAITH. Say ? I could not tell what to say at first. Yea, he put me so to it that my blood came up in my face. Even this Shame fetcht it up, and had almost beat me quite off. But at last I began to consider that that which is highly esteemed among men is had in abomination with God. And I thought again, this Shame tells me what men are ; but it tells me nothing what God, or the word of God, is. And I thought, moreover, that at the day of doom we shall not be doomed to death or life according to the hectoring spirits of the world, but according to the wisdom and law of the Highest. Therefore, thought I, what God says is best, indeed is best, though all the men in the world are against it. Seeing, then, that God prefers his religion, seeing God prefers a tender conscience, seeing they that make themselves fools for the kingdom of heaven are wisest, and that the poor man that loveth Christ is richer than the greatest man in the world that hates him, Shame, depart ; thou art an enemy to my salvation. Shall I entertain thee against my sovereign Lord ? How then shall I look Him in the face at his coming ? Should I now be ashamed of his ways and servants, how can I expect the blessing ? But indeed this Shame was a bold villain. I could scarcely shake him out of my company. Yea, he would be haunting of me, and continually whispering me in the ear with some one or other of the infirmities that attend religion. But at last I told him 't was but in vain to attempt further in this business ; for those things that he disdained, in those did I

see most glory ; and so at last I got past this importunate one. And when I had shaken him off, then I began to sing,

“The trials that those men do meet withal
That are obedient to the heavenly call,
Are manifold, and suited to the flesh,
And come, and come, and come again afresh,
That now, or some time else, we by them may
Be taken, overcome, and cast away.
Oh ! let the pilgrims, let the pilgrims then,
Be vigilant, and quit themselves like men.”

CHR. I am glad, my brother, that thou didst withstand this villain so bravely ; for of all, as thou sayest, I think he has the wrong name ; for he is so bold as to follow us in the streets, and to attempt to put us to shame before all men ; that is, to make us ashamed of that which is good. But if he was not himself audacious, he would never attempt to do as he does. But let us still resist him ; for, notwithstanding all his bravadoes, he promoteth the fool, and none else. “The wise shall inherit glory,” said Solomon ; “but shame shall be the promotion of fools.”

FAITH. I think we must cry to Him for help against Shame, that would have us be valiant for truth upon the earth.

CHR. You say true ; but did you meet nobody else in that valley ?

FAITH. No, not I ; for I had sunshine all the rest of the way through that, and also through the Valley of the Shadow of Death.

CHR. 'T was well for you. I am sure it fared far otherwise with me. I had for a long season, as soon almost as I entred into that valley, a dreadful combat with that foul fiend Apollyon. Yea, I thought verily he would have killed me, especially when he got me down, and crusht me under him, as if he would have crusht me to pieces ; for as he threw me, my sword flew out of my hand. Nay, he told me he was sure of me ; but I cried to God, and he heard me, and delivered me out of all my troubles. Then I entred into the Valley of

the Shadow of Death, and had no light for almost half the way through it. I thought I should have been killed there over and over ; but at last day brake, and the sun rose, and I went through that which was behind with far more ease and quiet. *now*

Moreover, I saw in my dream that as they went on Faithful, as he chanced to look on one side, saw a man whose name is Talkative walking at a distance besides them ; for in this place there was room enough for them all to walk. He was a tall man, and something more comely at a distance than at hand. To this man Faithful addressed himself in this manner.

FAITH. Friend, whither away ? Are you going to the heavenly country ?

TALK. I am going to the same place.

FAITH. That is well ; then I hope we may have your good company ?

TALK. With a very good will will I be your companion.

FAITH. Come on, then, and let us go together ; and let us spend our time in discoursing of things that are profitable.

TALK. To talk of things that are good, to me is very acceptable, with you or with any other ; and I am glad that I have met with those that incline to so good a work ; for, to speak the truth, there are but few who care thus to spend their time as they are in their travels, but choose much rather to be speaking of things to no profit ; and this hath been a trouble to me.

FAITH. That is, indeed, a thing to be lamented ; for what thing so worthy of the use of the tongue and mouth of men on earth as are the things of the God of heaven ?

TALK. I like you wonderful well, for your sayings are full of conviction ; and I will add, What thing is so pleasant, and what so profitable, as to talk of the things of God ? What things so pleasant ? that is, if a man hath any delight in things that are wonderful. For instance, if a man doth delight to talk of the history, or the mystery of things, or if a man doth love to talk of miracles, wonders, or signs, where shall he find things

recorded so delightful, and so sweetly penned, as in the Holy Scripture?

FAITH. That's true; but to be profited by such things in our talk, should be that which we design.

TALK. That is it that I said; for to talk of such things is most profitable; for by so doing a man may get knowledge of many things, as of the vanity of earthly things, and the benefit of things above. Thus in general; but, more particularly, by this a man may learn the necessity of the new birth, the insufficiency of our works, the need of Christ's righteousness, etc. Besides, by this a man may learn what it is to repent, to believe, to pray, to suffer, or the like. By this, also, a man may learn what are the great promises and consolations of the Gospel, to his own comfort. Further, by this a man may learn to refute false opinions, to vindicate the truth, and also to instruct the ignorant.

FAITH. All this is true; and glad am I to hear these things from you.

TALK. Alas! the want of this is the cause that so few understand the need of faith, and the necessity of a work of grace in their souls, in order to eternal life, but ignorantly live in the works of the law, by which a man can by no means obtain the kingdom of heaven.

FAITH. But, by your leave, heavenly knowledge of these is the gift of God. No man attaineth to them by human industry, or only by the talk of them.

TALK. All this I know very well; for a man can receive nothing, except it be given him from heaven. All is of grace, not of works. I could give you an hundred scriptures for the confirmation of this.

FAITH. Well, then, said Faithful, what is that one thing that we shall at this time found our discourse upon?

TALK. What you will. I will talk of things heavenly or things earthly, things moral or things evangelical, things sacred or things profane, things past or things to come, things foreign or things at home, things more essential or things circumstantial,—provided that all be done to our profit.

FAITH. Now did Faithful begin to wonder ; and, stepping to Christian (for he walked all this while by himself), he said to him, but softly, What a brave companion have we got ! Surely, this man will make a very excellent pilgrim.

CHR. At this Christian modestly smiled, and said, This man, with whom you are so taken, will beguile with this tongue of his, twenty of them that know him not.

FAITH. Do you know him, then ?

CHR. Know him ! Yes, better than he knows himself.

FAITH. Pray what is he ?

CHR. His name is Talkative. He dwelleth in our town. I wonder that you should be a stranger to him ; only I consider that our town is large.

FAITH. Whose son is he ? And whereabout doth he dwell ?

CHR. He is the son of one Say-well. He dwelt in Prating Row ; and he is known of all that are acquainted with him by the name of Talkative of Prating Row ; and, notwithstanding his fine tongue, he is but a sorry fellow.

FAITH. Well, he seems to be a very pretty man.

CHR. That is, to them that have not a thorough acquaintance with him ; for he is best abroad. Near home he is ugly enough. Your saying that he is a pretty man brings to my mind what I have observed in the work of a painter whose pictures show best at a distance, but very near more unpleasing.

FAITH. But I am ready to think you do but jest, because you smiled.

CHR. God forbid that I should jest, though I smiled, in this matter, or that I should accuse any falsely. I will give you a further discovery of him. This man is for any company, and for any talk. As he talketh now with you, so will he talk when he is on the ale-bench ; and the more drink he hath in his crown, the more of these things he hath in his mouth. Religion hath no place in his heart, or house, or conversation. All he hath lieth in his tongue ; and his religion is to make a noise therewith.

FAITH. Say you so? Then am I in this man greatly deceived.

CHR. Deceived! you may be sure of it. Remember the proverb, "They say, and do not;" but the kingdom of God is not in word, but in power. He talketh of prayer, of repentance, of faith, and of the new birth; but he knows but only to talk of them. I have been in his family, and have observed him both at home and abroad; and I know what I say of him is the truth. His house is as empty of religion as the white of an egg is of savor. There is there neither prayer, nor sign of repentance for sin. Yea, the brute, in his kind, serves God far better than he. He is the very stain, reproach, and shame of religion to all that know him. It can hardly have a good word in all that end of the town where he dwells, through him. Thus say the common people that know him, "A saint abroad, and a devil at home." His poor family finds it so. He is such a churl, such a railer at, and so unreasonable with his servants that they neither know how to do for or speak to him. Men that have any dealings with him say it is better to deal with a Turk than with him; for fairer dealings they shall have at their hands. This Talkative, if it be possible, will go beyond them, defraud, beguile, and overreach them. Besides, he brings up his sons to follow his steps; and if he finds in any of them a foolish timorousness (for so he calls the first appearance of a tender conscience), he calls them fools and blockheads, and by no means will employ them in much, or speak to their commendations before others. For my part, I am of opinion that he has, by his wicked life, caused many to stumble and fall; and will be, if God prevent not, the ruin of many more.

FAITH. Well, my brother, I am bound to believe you, not only because you say you know him, but also because, like a Christian, you make your reports of men. For I cannot think that you speak these things of ill-will, but because it is even so as you say.

CHR. Had I known him no more than you, I might, perhaps, have thought of him as at the first you did. Yea, had

he received this report at their hands only that are enemies to religion, I should have thought it had been a slander, a lot that often falls from bad men's mouths upon good men's names and professions. But all these things, yea, and a great many more as bad, of my own knowledge I can prove him guilty of. Besides, good men are ashamed of him; they can neither call him brother nor friend. The very naming of him among them makes them blush, if they know him.

FAITH. Well, I see that saying and doing are two things; and hereafter I shall better observe this distinction.

CHR. They are two things indeed, and are as diverse as are the soul and the body; for, as the body without the soul is but a dead carcass, so *saying*, if it be alone, is but a dead carcass also. The soul of religion is the practick part. "Pure religion and undefiled before God and the Father is this, to visit the fatherless and widows in their affliction, and to keep himself unspotted from the world." This Talkative is not aware of. He thinks that hearing and saying will make a good Christian; and thus he deceiveth his own soul. Hearing is but as the sowing of the seed; talking is not sufficient to prove that fruit is indeed in the heart and life. And let us assure ourselves that at the day of doom men shall be judged according to their fruits. It will not be said then, Did you believe? but, Were you doers, or talkers only? and accordingly shall they be judged. The end of the world is compared to our harvest; and you know men at harvest regard nothing but fruit. Not that anything can be accepted that is not of faith; but I speak this to show you how insignificant the profession of Talkative will be at that day.

FAITH. This brings to my mind that of Moses by which he describeth the beast that is clean. He is such an one that parteth the hoof and cheweth the cud; not that parteth the hoof only, or that cheweth the cud only. The hare cheweth the cud, but yet is unclean, because he parteth not the hoof. And this truly resembleth Talkative. He cheweth the cud; he seeketh knowledge; he cheweth upon the word; but he divideth not the hoof. He parteth not with the way of

sinner ; but, as the hare, he retaineth the foot of the dog or bear, and therefore he is unclean.

CHR. (You have spoken, for aught I know, the true gospel sense of these texts. And I will add another thing. Paul calleth some men, yea, and those great talkers too, sounding brass, and tinkling cymbals ; that is, as he expounds them in another place, things without life giving sound ; — things without life, that is, without the true faith and grace of the Gospel, and consequently things that shall never be placed in the kingdom of heaven among those that are the children of life, though their sound, by their talk, be as if it were the tongue or voice of an angel.

FAITH. Well, I was not so fond of his company at first, but I am sick of it now. What shall we do to be rid of him ?

CHR. Take my advice, and do as I bid you ; and you shall find that he will soon be sick of your company too, except God shall touch his heart, and turn it.

FAITH. What would you have me to do ?

CHR. Why, go to him, and enter into some serious discourse about the power of religion ; and ask him plainly when he has approved of it (for that he will) whether this thing be set up in his heart, house, or conversation.

FAITH. Then Faithful stept forward again, and said to Talkative, Come, what cheer ? How is it now ?

TALK. Thank you, well. I thought we should have had a great deal of talk by this time.

FAITH. Well, if you will, we will fall to it now ; and since you left it with me to state the question, let it be this : How doth the saving grace of God discover itself when it is in the heart of man ?

TALK. I perceive, then, that our talk must be about the power of things. Well, 't is a very good question ; and I shall be willing to answer you. And take my answer in brief thus : First, where the grace of God is in the heart, it causeth there a great outcry against sin. Secondly —

FAITH. Nay, hold ; let us consider of one at once. I think

you should rather say it shows itself by inclining the soul to abhor its sin.

TALK. Why, what difference is there between crying out against and abhorring of sin?

FAITH. Oh! a great deal. A man may cry out against sin of policy; but he cannot abhor it but by virtue of a godly antipathy against it. I have heard many cry out against sin in the pulpit, who can yet abide it well enough in the heart, house, and conversation. Joseph's mistress cried out with a loud voice, as if she had been very holy; but she would willingly, notwithstanding that, have committed uncleanness with him. Some cry out against sin even as the mother cries out against her child in her lap, when she calleth it slut and naughty girl, and then falls to hugging and kissing it.

TALK. You lie at the catch, I perceive.

FAITH. No, not I; I am only for setting things right. But what is the second thing whereby you would prove a discovery of a work of grace in the heart?

TALK. Great knowledge of gospel mysteries.

FAITH. This sign should have been first; but, first or last, it is also false, for knowledge, great knowledge, may be obtained in the mysteries of the Gospel, and yet no work of grace in the soul. Yea, if a man have all knowledge, he may yet be nothing, and so, consequently, be no child of God. When Christ said, "Do you know all these things?" and the disciples had answered yes, he added, "Blessed are ye if ye do them." He doth not lay the blessing in the knowing of them, but in the doing of them. For there is a knowledge that is not attended with doing: "He that knoweth his Master's will, and doeth it not." A man may know like an angel, and yet be no Christian. Therefore your sign of it is not true. Indeed, to know is a thing that pleaseth talkers and boasters; but to do, is that which pleaseth God. Not that the heart can be good without knowledge; for without that the heart is naught. There is therefore knowledge and knowledge — knowledge that resteth in the bare speculation of things, and knowledge that is accompanied with the grace of faith and love, which puts a

man upon doing even the will of God from the heart. The first of these will serve the talker ; but without the other the true Christian is not content. " Give me understanding, and I shall keep thy law ; yea, I shall observe it with my whole heart."

TALK. You lie at the catch again. This is not for edification.

FAITH. Well, if you please, propound another sign how this work of grace discovereth itself where it is.

TALK. Not I, for I see we shall not agree.

FAITH. Well, if you will not, will you give me leave to do it ?

TALK. You may use your liberty.

FAITH. A work of grace in the soul discovereth itself either to him that hath it or to standers-by. 'To him that hath it thus : it gives him conviction of sin, especially of the defilement of his nature, and the sin of unbelief, for the sake of which he is sure to be damned, if he findeth not mercy at God's hand by faith in Jesus Christ. This sight and sense of things worketh in him sorrow and shame for sin. He findeth, moreover, revealed in him the Saviour of the world, and the absolute necessity of closing with him for life ; at the which he findeth hungrings and thirstings after him, to which hungrings, etc., the promise is made. Now according to the strength or weakness of his faith in his Saviour so is his joy and peace, so is his love to holiness, so are his desires to know him more, and also to serve him in this world. But though, I say, it discovereth itself thus unto him, yet it is but seldom that he is able to conclude that this is a work of grace, because his corruptions now, and his abused reason make his mind to misjudge in this matter. Therefore in him that hath this work there is required a very sound judgment, before he can with steadiness conclude that this is a work of grace.

To others it is thus discovered : 1. by an experimental confession of his faith in Christ ; 2. by a life answerable to that confession ; to wit, a life of holiness — heart-holiness, family-holiness (if he hath a family), and by conversation-

holiness in the world ; which in the general teacheth him inwardly to abhor his sin, and himself for that, in secret, to suppress it in his family, and to promote holiness in the world, not by talk only, as a hypocrite or talkative person may do, but by a practical subjection in faith and love to the power of the word. And now, sir, as to this brief description of the work of grace, and also the discovery of it, if you have aught to object, object ; if not, then give me leave to propound to you a second question.

TALK. Nay, my part is not now to object, but to hear : Let me, therefore, have your second question.

FAITH. It is this : Do you experience the first part of this description of it ; and doth your life and conversation testify the same ? Or standeth your religion in word or in tongue, and not in deed and truth ? Pray, if you incline to answer me in this, say no more than you know the God above will say Amen to, and also nothing but what your conscience can justify you in ; for not he that commendeth himself is approved, but whom the Lord commendeth. Besides, to say I am thus and thus, when my conversation and all my neighbors tell me I lie, is great wickedness.

Then Talkative at first began to blush ; but, recovering himself, thus he replied : You come now to experience, to conscience, and God, and to appeal to him for justification of what is spoken. This kind of discourse I did not expect ; nor am I disposed to give an answer to such questions, because I count not myself bound thereto, unless you take upon you to be a catechizer ; and though you should so do, yet I may refuse to make you my judge. But, I pray, will you tell me why you ask me such questions ?

FAITH. Because I saw you forward to talk, and because I knew not that you had aught else but notion. Besides, to tell you all the truth, I have heard of you that you are a man whose religion lies in talk, and that your conversation gives this your mouth-profession the lie. They say you are a spot among Christians, and that religion fareth the worse for your ungodly conversation ; that some already have stumbled at your

wicked ways, and that more are in danger of being destroyed thereby. Your religion and an ale-house and covetousness and uncleanness and swearing and lying and vain company-keeping, etc., will stand together. The proverb is true of you which is said of a whore, to wit, that she is a shame to all women. So are you a shame to all professors.

TALK. Since you are so ready to take up reports, and to judge so rashly as you do, I cannot but conclude you are some peevish or melancholy man, not fit to be discoursed with ; and so adieu.

Then up came Christian, and said to his brother, I told you how it would happen. Your words and his lusts could not agree. He had rather leave your company than reform his life. But he is gone, as I said. Let him go ; the loss is no man's but his own. He has saved us the trouble of going from him ; for he continuing, as I suppose he will do, as he is, he would have been but a blot in our company. Besides, the apostle says, "From such withdraw thyself."

FAITH. But I am glad we had this little discourse with him. It may happen that he will think of it again. However, I have dealt plainly with him, and so am clear of his blood if he perisheth.

CHR. You did well to talk so plainly to him as you did. There is but little of this faithful dealing with men nowadays, and that makes religion to stink so in the nostrils of many as it doth ; for they are these talkative fools, whose religion is only in word, and are debauched and vain in their conversation, that, being so much admitted into the fellowship of the godly, do puzzle the world, blemish Christianity, and grieve the sincere. I wish that all men would deal with such as you have done. Then should they either be made more conformable to religion, or the company of saints would be too hot for them. Then did Faithful say,

"How Talkative at first lifts up his plumes !
How bravely doth he speak ! How he presumes
To drive down all before him ! But so soon
As Faithful talks of heart-work, like the moon

That's past the full, into the wane he goes;
And so will all but he that heart-work knows."

Thus they went on, talking of what they had seen by the way, and so made that way easy, which would otherwise no doubt have been tedious to them; for now they went through a wilderness.

Now when they were got almost quite out of this wilderness, Faithful chanced to cast his eye back, and espied one coming after them, and he knew him. Oh! said Faithful to his brother, who comes yonder? Then Christian looked, and said, It is my good friend Evangelist. Aye, and my good friend too, said Faithful, for 'twas he that set me the way to the gate. Now was Evangelist come up unto them, and thus saluted them.

EVAN. Peace be with you, dearly beloved; and peace be to your helpers.

CHR. Welcome! welcome! my good Evangelist. The sight of thy countenance brings to my remembrance thy ancient kindness and unwearied laboring for my eternal good.

FAITH. And a thousand times welcome, said good Faithful, thy company, O sweet Evangelist. How desirable is it to us poor pilgrims!

EVAN. Then said Evangelist, How hath it fared with you, my friends, since the time of our last parting? What have you met with, and how have you behaved yourselves?

Then Christian and Faithful told him of all things that had happened to them in the way, and how, and with what difficulty, they had arrived to that place.

Right glad am I, said Evangelist, not that you have met with trials, but that you have been victors, and for that you have, notwithstanding many weaknesses, continued in the way to this very day. I say, right glad am I of this thing, and that for mine own sake and yours. I have sowed, and you have reaped; and the day is coming when both he that sowed and they that reaped shall rejoice together; that is, if you hold out; for in due time ye shall reap, if you faint not.

The crown is before you ; and it is an incorruptible one. So run that you may obtain it. Some there be that set out for this crown, and after they have gone far for it, another comes in and takes it from them. Hold fast, therefore, that you have. Let no man take your crown. You are not yet out of the gunshot of the devil. You have not resisted unto blood, striving against sin. Let the kingdom be always before you, and believe steadfastly concerning the things that are invisible. Let nothing that is on this side the other world get within you. And, above all, look well to your own hearts and to the lusts thereof ; for they are deceitful above all things, and desperately wicked. Set your faces like a flint. You have all power in heaven and earth on your side.

CHR. Then Christian thanked him for his exhortation, but told him withal that they would have him speak farther to them for their help the rest of the way, and the rather for that they well knew that he was a prophet, and could tell them of things that might happen unto them, and also how they might resist and overcome them. To which request Faithful also consented. So Evangelist began as followeth.

EVAN. My sons, you have heard in the word of the truth of the Gospel that you must through many tribulations enter into the kingdom of heaven, and again that in every city bonds and afflictions abide you ; and therefore you cannot expect that you should go long on your pilgrimage without them, in some sort or other. You have found something of the truth of these testimonies upon you already, and more will immediately follow ; for now, as you see, you are almost out of this wilderness, and therefore you will soon come into a town that you will by and by see before you ; and in that town you will be hardly beset with enemies, who will strain hard but they will kill you ; and be you sure that one or both of you must seal the testimony which you hold, with blood ; but be you faithful unto death, and the King will give you a crown of life. He that shall die there, although his death will be unnatural, and his pain, perhaps, great, he will yet have the better of his fellow, not only because he will be ar-

ived at the Celestial City soonest, but because he will escape many miseries that the other will meet with in the rest of his journey. But when you are come to the town, and shall find fulfilled what I have here related, then remember your friend, and quit yourselves like men, and commit the keeping of your souls to God in well-doing, as unto a faithful Creator.

Then I saw in my dream that when they were got out of the wilderness they presently saw a town before them, and the name of that town is Vanity; and at the town there is a fair kept, called Vanity Fair. It is kept all the year long. It beareth the name of Vanity Fair because the town where 't is kept is lighter than vanity, and also because all that is there sold, or that cometh thither, is vanity, as is the saying of the wise, All that cometh is vanity.

This fair is no new erected business, but a thing of ancient standing. I will show you the original of it. Almost five thousand years ago, there were pilgrims walking to the Celestial City, as these two honest persons are; and Beelzebub, Apollyon, and Legion, with their companions, perceiving by the path that the pilgrims made that their way to the city lay through this town of Vanity, they contrived here to set up a fair, — a fair wherein should be sold all sorts of vanity, and that it should last all the year long. Therefore at this fair are all such merchandise sold as houses, lands, trades, places, honors, preferments, titles, countries, kingdoms, lusts, pleasures; and delights of all sorts, as whores, bawds, wives, husbands, children, masters, servants, lives, blood, bodies, souls, silver, gold, pearls, precious stones, and what not. And moreover, at this fair there is at all times to be seen jugglings, cheats, games, plays, fools, apes, knaves, and rogues, and that of every kind. Here are to be seen, too, and that for nothing, thefts, murders, adulteries, false-swearers, and that of a blood-red color. And, as in other fairs of less moment there are the several rows and streets under their proper names, where such and such wares are vended, so here likewise you have the proper places, rows, streets (*viz*, countries and kingdoms) where the wares of this fair are soonest to be found.

Here is the Britain Row, the French Row, the Italian Row, the Spanish Row, the German Row, where several sorts of vanities are to be sold. But, as in other fairs some one commodity is as the chief of all the fair, so the ware of Rome and her merchandise is greatly promoted in this fair ; only our English nation, with some others, have taken a dislike thereat.

Now, as I said, the way to the Celestial City lies just through this town where this lusty fair is kept ; and he that would go to the city and yet not go through this town must needs go out of the world. The Prince of princes himself, when here, went through this town to his own country, and that upon a fair-day too. Yea, and, as I think, it was Beelzebub, the chief lord of this fair, that invited him to buy of his vanities, yea, would have made him lord of the fair, would he but have done him reverence as he went through the town. Yea, because he was such a person of honor, Beelzebub had him from street to street, and showed him all the kingdoms of the world in a little time, that he might, if possible, allure that Blessed One to cheapen and buy some of his vanities ; but he had no mind to the merchandise, and therefore left the town without laying out so much as one farthing upon these vanities. This fair, therefore, is an ancient thing, of long standing, and a very great fair.

Now these pilgrims, as I said, must needs go through this fair. Well, so they did ; but, behold, even as they entred into the fair, all the people in the fair were moved, and the town itself, as it were, in a hubbub about them, and that for several reasons. For, first, the pilgrims were clothed with such kind of raiment as was diverse from the raiment of any that traded in that fair. The people, therefore, of the fair made a great gazing upon them. Some said they were fools ; some, they were bedlams ; and some, they were outlandish men. Secondly, and as they wondred at their apparel, so they did likewise at their speech ; for few could understand what they said. They naturally spoke the language of Canaan ; but they that kept the fair were the men of this world. So that from one end of the fair to the other, they seemed barbarians each

to the other. (Thirdly, but that which did not a little amuse the merchandisers was that these pilgrims set very light by all their wares. They cared not so much as to look upon them; and if they called upon them to buy, they would put their fingers in their ears, and cry, Turn away mine eyes from beholding vanity, and look upward, signifying that their trade and traffic was in heaven. One chanced, mockingly, beholding the carriages of the men, to say unto them, "What will ye buy?" But they, looking gravely upon him, said, We buy the truth. At that there was an occasion taken to despise the men the more, some mocking, some taunting, some speaking reproachfully, and some calling upon others to smite them. At last things came to an hubbub and great stir in the fair, insomuch that all order was confounded.

Now was word presently brought to the great one of the fair, who quickly came down, and deputed some of his most trusty friends to take those men into examination about whom the fair was almost overturned. So the men were brought to examination; and they that sat upon them asked them whence they came, whither they went, and what they did there in such an unusual garb. The men told them that they were pilgrims and strangers in the world, and that they were going to their own country, which was the heavenly Jerusalem, and that they had given no occasion to the men of the town, nor yet to the merchandisers, thus to abuse them, and to let them in their journey, except it was for that, when one asked them what they would buy, they said they would buy the truth. But they that were appointed to examine them did not believe them to be any other than bedlams and mad, or else such as came to put all things into a confusion in the fair. Therefore they took them and beat them, and besmeared them with dirt, and then put them into the cage, that they might be made a spectacle to all the men of the fair. There, therefore, they lay for some time, and were made the objects of any man's sport, or malice, or revenge, the great one of the fair laughing still at all that befell them.

But the men being patient, and not rendering railing for

railing, but contrariwise blessing, and giving good words for bad, and kindness for injuries done, some men in the fair that were more observing and less prejudiced than the rest began to check and blame the baser sort for their continual abuses done by them to the men. They, therefore, in an angry manner let fly at them again, counting them as bad as the men in the cage, and telling them that they seemed confederates, and should be made partakers of their misfortunes. The other replied that, for aught they could see, the men were quiet and sober, and intended nobody any harm; and that there were many that traded in their fair that were more worthy to be put into the cage, yea, and pillory too, than were the men that they had abused. Thus, after divers words had passed on both sides, the men behaving themselves all the while very wisely and soberly before them, they fell to some blows among themselves, and did harm one to another.

Then were these two poor men brought before their examiners again, and there charged as being guilty of the late hubbub that had been in the fair. So they beat them pitifully, and hanged irons upon them, and led them in chains up and down the fair, for an example and terror to others, lest any should speak in their behalf, or join themselves unto them. But Christian and Faithful behaved themselves yet more wisely, and received the ignominy and shame that was cast upon them with so much meekness and patience that it won to their side, though but few in comparison of the rest, several of the men in the fair. This put the other party yet into a greater rage, insomuch that they concluded the death of these two men. Wherefore they threatned that neither cage nor irons should serve their turn, but that they should die for the abuse they had done, and for deluding the men of the fair.

Then were they remanded to the cage again, until further order should be taken with them. So they put them in, and made their feet fast in the stocks. Here, therefore, they called again to mind what they had heard from their faithful friend Evangelist, and were the more confirmed in their way and sufferings by what he told them would happen to them.

They also now comforted each other, that whose lot it was to suffer, even he should have the best on 't. Therefore each man secretly wished that he might have that preferment. But committing themselves to the all-wise dispose of Him that ruleth all things, with much content they abode in the condition in which they were, until they should be otherwise disposed of.

Then, a convenient time being appointed, they brought them forth to their trial, in order to their condemnation. When the time was come, they were brought before their enemies and arraigned. The judge's name was Lord Hate-good. Their indictment was one and the same in substance, though somewhat varying in form ; the contents whereof was this : that they were enemies to, and disturbers of, their trade ; that they had made commotions and divisions in the town, and had won a party to their own most dangerous opinions, in contempt of the law of their prince.

Then Faithful began to answer that he had only set himself against that which had set itself against Him that is higher than the highest. And, said he, as for disturbance, I make none, being myself a man of peace. The parties that were won to us were won by beholding our truth and innocence ; and they are only turned from the worse to the better. And as to the king you talk of, since he is Beelzebub, the enemy of our Lord, I defy him and all his angels.

Then proclamation was made that they that had aught to say for their lord the king against the prisoner at the bar should forthwith appear, and give in their evidence. So there came in three witnesses, to wit, Envy, Superstition, and Pickthank. They were then asked if they knew the prisoner at the bar, and what they had to say for their lord the king against him.

Then stood forth Envy, and said to this effect : My lord, I have known this man a long time, and will attest upon my oath before this honorable bench, that he is —

JUDGE. Hold ; give him his oath.

So they swear him. Then he said, My lord, this man, notwithstanding his plausible name, is one of the vilest men in

our country. He neither regardeth prince nor people, law nor custom, but doth all that he can to possess all men with certain of his disloyal notions, which he in the general calls principles of faith and holiness. And in particular I heard him once myself affirm that Christianity and the customs of our town of Vanity were diametrically opposite, and could not be reconciled. By which saying, my lord, he doth at once not only condemn all our laudable doings, but us in the doing of them.

Then did the judge say to him, Hast thou any more to say?

ENVY. My lord, I could say much more; only I would not be tedious to the court. Yet if need be, when the other gentlemen have given in their evidence, rather than anything shall be wanting that will despatch him, I will enlarge my testimony against him. So he was bid stand by.

Then they called Superstition, and bid him look upon the prisoner. They also asked what he could say for their lord the king against him. Then they swore him. So he began.

SUPER. My lord, I have no great acquaintance with this man; nor do I desire to have further knowledge of him. However, this I know, that he is a very pestilent fellow, from some discourse that the other day I had with him in this town; for then, talking with him, I heard him say that our religion was naught, and such by which a man could by no means please God. Which saying of his, my lord, your lordship very well knows what necessarily thence will follow, to wit, that we still do worship in vain, are yet in our sins, and finally shall be damned; and this is that which I have to say.

Then was Pickthank sworn, and bid say what he knew in the behalf of their lord the king against the prisoner at the bar.

PICK. My lord, and you gentlemen all, this fellow I have known of a long time, and have heard him speak things that ought not to be spoke; for he hath railed on our noble prince Beelzebub, and hath spoke contemptibly of his honorable friends, whose names are the Lord Old Man, the Lord Carnal Delight, the Lord Luxurious, the Lord Desire of Vain Glory, my old Lord Lechery, Sir Having Greedy, with all the rest of

our nobility ; and he hath said, moreover, that if all men were of his mind, if possible, there is not one of these noblemen should have any longer a being in this town. Besides, he hath not been afraid to rail on you, my lord, who are now appointed to be his judge, calling you an ungodly villain, with many other such like vilifying terms, with which he hath bespattered most of the gentry of our town.

When this Pickthank had told his tale, the judge directed his speech to the prisoner at the bar, saying, Thou runagate, heretic, and traitor, hast thou heard what these honest gentlemen have witnessed against thee ?

FAITH. May I speak a few words in my own defence ?

JUDGE. Sirrah, sirrah, thou deservest to live no longer, but to be slain immediately upon the place ; yet, that all men may see our gentleness towards thee, let us hear what thou, vile runagate, hast to say.

FAITH. 1. I say, then, in answer to what Mr. Envy hath spoken, I never said aught but this, that what rule, or laws, or custom, or people, were flat against the word of God, are diametrically opposite to Christianity. If I have said amiss in this, convince me of my error, and I am ready here before you to make my recantation.

2. As to the second, to wit, Mr. Superstition, and his charge against me, I said only this, that in the worship of God there is required a divine faith ; but there can be no divine faith without a divine revelation of the will of God. Therefore whatever is thrust into the worship of God that is not agreeable to divine revelation cannot be done but by an human faith, which faith will not be profitable to eternal life.

3. As to what Mr. Pickthank hath said, I say (avoiding terms, as that I am said to rail, and the like), that the prince of this town, with all the rabblement his attendants by this gentleman named, are more fit for being in hell than in this town and country. And so the Lord have mercy upon me.

Then the judge called to the jury, who all this while stood by to hear and observe : Gentlemen of the jury, you see this man about whom so great an uproar hath been made in this

town. You have also heard what these worthy gentlemen have witnessed against him. Also, you have heard his reply and confession. It lieth now in your breasts to hang him, or save his life ; but yet I think meet to instruct you into our law.

There was an act made in the days of Pharaoh the Great, servant to our prince, that, lest those of a contrary religion should multiply and grow too strong for him, their males should be thrown into the river. There was also an act made in the days of Nebuchadnezzar the Great, another of his servants, that whoever would not fall down and worship his golden image, should be thrown into a fiery furnace. There was also an act made in the days of Darius, that whoso for some time called upon any god but him should be cast into the lions' den. Now the substance of these laws this rebel has broken, not only in thought, — which is not to be borne, but also in word and deed, — which must, therefore, needs be intolerable. For that of Pharaoh, his law was made upon a supposition to prevent mischief, no crime being yet apparent ; but here is a crime apparent. For the second and third, you see he disputeth against our religion ; and for the treason he hath confessed he deserveth to die the death.

Then went the jury out, whose names were Mr. Blindman, Mr. No-good, Mr. Malice, Mr. Love-lust, Mr. Live-loose, Mr. Heady, Mr. High-mind, Mr. Enmity, Mr. Liar, Mr. Cruelty, Mr. Hate-light, and Mr. Implacable, who every one gave in his private verdict against him among themselves, and afterwards unanimously concluded to bring him in guilty before the judge. And first among themselves, Mr. Blindman, the foreman, said, I see clearly that this man is an heretic. Then said Mr. No-good, Away with such a fellow from the earth. Aye, said Mr. Malice, for I hate the very looks of him. Then said Mr. Love-lust, I could never endure him. Nor I, said Mr. Live-loose, for he would always be condemning my way. Hang him, hang him, said Mr. Heady. A sorry scrub, said Mr. High-mind. My heart riseth against him, said Mr. Enmity. He is a rogue, said Mr. Liar. Hanging is too good

for him, said Mr. Cruelty. Let us despatch him out of the way, said Mr. Hate-light. Then said Mr. Implacable, Might I have all the world given me, I could not be reconciled to him. Therefore let us forthwith bring him in guilty of death. And so they did. Therefore he was presently condemned to be had from the place where he was to the place from whence he came, and there to be put to the most cruel death that could be invented.

They therefore brought him out, to do with him according to their law; and first they scourged him, then they buffeted him, then they lanced his flesh with knives; after that they stoned him with stones, then prickt him with their swords; and last of all, they burned him to ashes at the stake. Thus came Faithful to his end. Now I saw that there stood behind the multitude a chariot and a couple of horses waiting for Faithful, who, so soon as his adversaries had despatched him, was taken up into it, and straightway was carried up through the clouds with sound of trumpet, the nearest way to the celestial gate.

But as for Christian, he had some respite, and was remanded back to prison. So he there remained for a space. But He who overrules all things, having the power of their rage in his own hand, so wrought it about that Christian for that time escaped them, and went his way.

And as he went, he sang, saying,

“Well, Faithful, thou hast faithfully profest
Unto thy Lord, with whom thou shalt be blest,
When faithless ones, with all their vain delights,
Are crying out under their hellish plights.
Sing, Faithful, sing, and let thy name survive;
For though they killed thee, thou art yet alive.”

Now I saw in my dream that Christian went not forth alone; for there was one whose name was Hopeful, being so made by the beholding of Christian and Faithful in their words and behavior, in their sufferings at the fair, who joined himself unto him, and entering into a brotherly covenant, told him

that he would be his companion. Thus one died to bear testimony to the truth, and another rises out of his ashes to be a companion with Christian in his pilgrimage. This Hopeful also told Christian that there were many more of the men in the fair that would take their time and follow after.

So I saw that quickly after they were got out of the fair they overtook one that was going before them, whose name was By-ends. So they said to him, What countryman, sir? and how far go you this way? He told them that he came from the town of Fair-speech and he was going to the Celestial City, but told them not his name.

From Fair-speech? said Christian; is there any good that lives there?

By. Yes, said By-ends, I hope.

CHR. Pray, sir, what may I call you? said Christian.

By. I am a stranger to you, and you to me. If you be going this way, I shall be glad of your company; if not, I must be content.

CHR. This town of Fair-speech, said Christian, I have heard of; and, as I remember, they say it's a wealthy place.

By. Yes, I will assure you that it is; and I have very many rich kindred there.

CHR. Pray, who are your kindred there, if a man may be so bold?

By. Almost the whole town; and in particular my Lord Turn-about, my Lord Time-server, my Lord Fair-speech, from whose ancestors that town first took its name; also Mr. Smooth-man, Mr. Facing-both-ways, Mr. Any-thing. And the parson of our parish, Mr. Two-tongues, was my mother's own brother, by father's side; and, to tell you the truth, I am become a gentleman of good quality; yet my great-grandfather was but a waterman, looking one way and rowing another, and I got most of my estate by the same occupation.

CHR. Are you a married man?

By. Yes, and my wife is a very virtuous woman, the daughter of a virtuous woman. She was my Lady Feigning's daughter. Therefore she came of a very honorable family, and is arrived

to such a pitch of breeding that she knows how to carry it to all, even to prince and peasant. 'Tis true, we somewhat differ in religion from those of the stricter sort, yet but in two small points: first, we never strive against wind and tide; secondly, we are always most zealous when Religion goes in his silver slippers. We love much to walk with him in the street, if the sun shines and the people applaud him.

Then Christian stept a little aside to his fellow Hopeful, saying, it runs in my mind that this is one By-ends, of Fair-speech; and if it be he, we have as very a knave in our company as dwelleth in all these parts. Then said Hopeful, Ask him; methinks he should not be ashamed of his name. So Christian came up with him again, and said, Sir, you talk as if you knew something more than all the world doth; and, if I take not my mark amiss, I deem I have half a guess of you. Is not your name Mr. By-ends, of Fair-speech?

By. This is not my name; but indeed it is a nickname that is given me by some that cannot abide me, and I must be content to bear it as a reproach, as other good men have borne theirs before me.

CHR. But did you never give an occasion to men to call you by this name?

By. Never, never! The worst that ever I did to give them an occasion to give me this name was that I had always the luck to jump in my judgment with the present way of the times, whatever it was; and my chance was to get thereby. But if things are thus cast upon me, let me count them a blessing; but let not the malicious load me therefore with reproach.

CHR. I thought, indeed, that you were the man that I heard of; and, to tell you what I think, I fear this name belongs to you more properly than you are willing we should think it doth.

By. Well, if you will thus imagine, I cannot help it. You shall find me a fair company-keeper, if you will still admit me your associate.

CHR. If you will go with us, you must go against wind and

tide ; the which, I perceive, is against your opinion. You must also own Religion in his rags, as well as when in his silver slippers, and stand by him, too, when bound in irons, as well as when he walketh the streets with applause.

BY. You must not impose, nor lord it over my faith. Leave me to my liberty, and let me go with you.

CHR. Not a step further, unless you will do, in what I propound, as we.

Then said By-ends, I shall never desert my old principles, since they are harmless and profitable. If I may not go with you, I must do as I did before you overtook me, even go by myself, until some overtake me that will be glad of my company.

Now I saw in my dream, that Christian and Hopeful forsook him, and kept their distance before him ; but one of them, looking back, saw three men following Mr. By-ends ; and, behold, as they came up with him, he made them a very low congee, and they also gave him a compliment. The men's names were Mr. Hold-the-world, Mr. Money-love, and Mr. Save-all, men that Mr. By-ends had formerly been acquainted with ; for in their minority they were school-fellows, and were taught by one Mr. Gripeman, a schoolmaster in Lovegain, which is a market-town in the county of Coveting, in the North. This schoolmaster taught them the art of getting, either by violence, cozenage, flattering, lying, or by putting on a guise of religion ; and these four gentlemen had attained much of the art of their master, so that they could each of them have kept such a school themselves.

Well, when they had, as I said, thus saluted each other, Mr. Money-love said to Mr. By-ends, Who are they upon the road before us ? for Christian and Hopeful were yet within view.

BY. They are a couple of far-countrimen, that, after their mode, are going on pilgrimage.

MONEY. Alas ! why did they not stay, that we might have had their good company ? for they, and we, and you, sir, I hope, are all going on a pilgrimage.

BY. We are so, indeed ; but the men before us are so rigid, and love so much their own notions, and do also so lightly esteem the opinions of others, that let a man be ever so godly, yet if he jumps not with them in all things, they thrust him quite out of their company.

SAVE. That is bad ; but we read of some that are righteous overmuch, and such men's rigidity prevails with them to judge and condemn all but themselves. But, I pray, what, and how many, were the things wherein you differed ?

BY. Why they, after their headstrong manner, conclude that it is their duty to rush on their journey all weathers ; and I am for waiting for wind and tide. They are for hazarding all for God at a clap ; and I am for taking all advantages to secure my life and estate. They are for holding their notions, though all other men be against them ; but I am for religion in what, and so far as the times and my safety will bear it. They are for religion when in rags and contempt ; but I am for him when he walks in his golden slippers, in the sunshine, and with applause.

HOLD-THE-WORLD. Aye, and hold you there still, good Mr. By-ends ; for, for my part, I can count him but a fool that, having the liberty to keep what he has, shall be so unwise to lose it. Let us be wise as serpents. 'Tis best to make hay when the sun shines. You see how the bee lieth still all winter, and bestirs her only when she can have profit with pleasure. God sends sometimes rain, and sometimes sunshine. If they be such fools to go through the first, yet let us be content to take fair weather along with us. For my part, I like that religion best that will stand with the security of God's good blessings unto us ; for who can imagine, that is ruled by his reason, since God has bestowed upon us the good things of this life, but that he would have us keep them for his sake ? Abraham and Solomon grew rich in religion ; and Job says that a good man shall lay up gold as dust ; but he must not be such as the men before us, if they be as you have described them.

SAVE. I think that we are all agreed in this matter ; and therefore there needs no more words about it.

MONEY. No, there needs no more words about this matter, indeed ; for he that believes neither Scripture nor reason (and you see we have both on our side) neither knows his own liberty nor seeks his own safety.

By. My brethren, we are, as you see, going all on pilgrimage ; and for our better diversion from things that are bad, give me leave to propound unto you this question. Suppose a man, a minister, or a tradesman, etc., should have an advantage lie before him to get the good blessings of this life, yet so as that he can by no means come by them except, in appearance at least, he becomes extraordinary zealous in some points of religion that he meddled not with before. May he not use this means to attain his end, and yet be a right honest man ?

MONEY. I see the bottom of your question ; and with these gentlemen's good leave, I will endeavor to shape you an answer. And first, to speak to your question as it concerneth a minister himself, suppose a minister, a worthy man, possessed but of a very small benefice, and has in his eye a greater, more fat and plump by far. He has also now an opportunity of getting of it, yet so as by being more studious, by preaching more frequently and zealously, and, because the temper of the people requires it, by altering of some of his principles. For my part, I see no reason but a man may do this, provided he has a call, aye, and more a great deal besides, and yet be an honest man. For why ?

1. His desire of a greater benefice is lawful (this cannot be contradicted), since 't is set before him by Providence. So then he may get it if he can, making no question for conscience' sake.

2. Besides, his desire after that benefice makes him more studious, a more zealous preacher, etc., and so makes him a better man, yea, makes him better improve his parts, which is according to the mind of God.

3. Now, as for his complying with the temper of his people, by dissenting, to serve them, some of his principles, this argueth : (1.) that he is of a self-denying temper ; (2.) of a

sweet and winning deportment; and (3.) so more fit for the ministerial function.

4. I conclude, then, that a minister that changes a small for a great should not, for so doing, be judged as covetous; but rather, since he is improved in his parts and industry thereby, be counted as one that pursues his call and the opportunity put into his hand to do good.

And now to the second part of the question, which concerns the tradesman you mentioned. Suppose such an one to have but a poor employ in the world, but by becoming religious he may mend his market, perhaps get a rich wife, or more and far better customers to his shop; for my part, I see no reason but that this may be lawfully done. For why?

1. To become religious is a virtue, by what means soever a man becomes so.

2. Nor is it unlawful to get a rich wife, or more custom to my shop.

3. Besides, the man that gets these by becoming religious, gets that which is good of them that are good, by becoming good himself. So then here is a good wife, and good customers, and good gain, and all these by becoming religious, which is good. Therefore, to become religious to get all these is a good and profitable design.

This answer, thus made by this Mr. Money-love to Mr. By-ends' question, was highly applauded by them all. Wherefore they concluded, upon the whole, that it was most wholesome and advantageous. And because, as they thought, no man was able to contradict it, and because Christian and Hopeful was yet within call, they jointly agreed to assault them with the question as soon as they overtook them, and the rather because they had opposed Mr. By-ends before. So they called after them, and they stopt and stood still till they came up to them; but they concluded, as they went, that not Mr. By-ends, but old Mr. Hold-the-world should propound the question to them, because, as they supposed, their answer to him would be without the remainder of that heat that was kindled betwixt Mr. By-ends and them at their parting a little

before. So they came up to each other, and after a short salutation, Mr. Hold-the-world propounded the question to Christian and his fellow, and then bid them to answer if they could.

Then said Christian, Even a babe in religion may answer ten thousand such questions. For if it be unlawful to follow Christ for loaves, as it is, how much more abominable is it to make of him and religion a stalking-horse to get and enjoy the world ! Nor do we find any other than heathens, hypocrites, devils, and witches, that are of this opinion.

1. Heathens : for when Hamor and Shechem had a mind to the daughter and cattle of Jacob, and saw that there was no ways for them to come at them but by being circumcised, they said to their companions, If every male of us be circumcised, as they are circumcised, shall not their cattle, and their substance, and every beast of theirs be ours ? Their daughters and their cattle were that which they sought to obtain, and their religion the stalking-horse they made use of to come at them. Read the whole story.

2. The hypocritical Pharisees were also of this religion. Long prayers were their pretence, but to get widows' houses were their intent ; and greater damnation was from God their judgment.

3. Judas the devil was also of this religion. He was religious for the bag, that he might be possessed of what was therein ; but he was lost, cast away, and the very son of perdition.

4. Simon the witch was of this religion too ; for he would have had the Holy Ghost that he might have got money therewith ; and his sentence from Peter's mouth was according.

5. Neither will it out of my mind but that that man that takes up religion for the world will throw away religion for the world ; for so surely as Judas designed the world in becoming religious, so surely did he also sell religion and his Master for the same. To answer the question, therefore, affirmatively, as I perceive you have done, and to accept of, as

authentic, such answer, is both heathenish, hypocritical, and devilish ; and your reward will be according to your works.

Then they stood staring one upon another, but had not wherewith to answer Christian. Hopeful also approved of the soundness of Christian's answer. So there was a great silence among them. Mr. By-ends and his company also staggered and kept behind, that Christian and Hopeful might outgo them. Then said Christian to his fellow, If these men cannot stand before the sentence of men, what will they do with the sentence of God ? And if they are mute when dealt with by vessels of clay, what will they do when they shall be rebuked by the flames of a devouring fire ?

Then Christian and Hopeful outwent them again, and went till they came at a delicate plain, called Ease, where they went with much content ; but that plain was but narrow. So they were quickly got over it. Now at the further side of that plain was a little hill, called Lucre, and in that hill a silver-mine, which some of them that had formerly gone that way, because of the rarity of it, had turned aside to see ; but going too near the brim of the pit, the ground, being deceitful under them, broke, and they were slain. Some also had been maimed there, and could not, to their dying day, be their own men again.

Then I saw in my dream, that a little off the road, over against the silver-mine, stood Demas, gentleman-like, to call passengers to come and see ; who said to Christian and his fellow, Ho ! turn aside hither, and I will show you a thing.

CHR. What thing so deserving as to turn us out of the way to see it ?

DEMAS. Here is a silver-mine, and some digging in it for treasure. If you will come, with a little pains you may richly provide for yourselves.

HOPE. Then said Hopeful, Let us go see.

CHR. Not I, said Christian. I have heard of this place before now, and how many have there been slain ; and besides, that treasure is a snare to those that seek it, for it hindreth them in their pilgrimage.

Then Christian called to Demas, saying, Is not the place dangerous? Hath it not hindred many in their pilgrimage?

DEMAS. Not very dangerous, except to those that are careless; but withal he blushed as he spake.

CHR. Then said Christian to Hopeful, Let us not stir a step, but still keep on our way.

HOPE. I will warrant you, when By-ends comes up, if he hath the same invitation as we, he will turn in thither to see.

CHR. No doubt thereof; for his principles lead him that way, and a hundred to one but he dies there.

DEMAS. Then Demas called again, saying, But will you not come over and see?

CHR. Then Christian roundly answered, saying, Demas, thou art an enemy to the right ways of the Lord of this way, and hast been already condemned for thine own turning aside, by one of his Majesty's judges; and why seekest thou to bring us into the like condemnation? Besides, if we at all turn aside, our Lord the King will certainly hear thereof, and will there put us to shame where we would stand with boldness before him.

Demas cried again that he also was one of their fraternity; and that if they would tarry a little, he also himself would walk with them.

CHR. Then said Christian, What is thy name? Is it not the same by the which I have called thee?

DEMAS. Yes, my name is Demas. I am the son of Abraham.

CHR. I know you. Gehazi was your great-grandfather, and Judas your father; and you have trod their steps. It is but a devilish prank that thou usest. Thy father was hanged for a traitor; and thou deservest no better reward. Assure thyself that when we come to the King, we will do him word of this thy behavior. Thus they went their way.

By this time By-ends and his companions were come again within sight; and they at the first beck went over to Demas. Now, whether they fell into the pit by looking over the brink thereof, or whether they went down to dig, or whether they

were smothered in the bottom by the damps that commonly arise, — of these things I am not certain ; but this I observed, that they never were seen again in the way. Then sang Christian,

“ By-ends and silver Demas both agree.
One calls ; the other runs, that he may be
A sharer in his lucre. So these two
Take up in this world, and no further go.”

Now I saw that, just on the other side of this plain, the pilgrims came to a place where stood an old monument, hard by the highway-side, at the sight of which they were both concerned, because of the strangeness of the form thereof ; for it seemed to them as if it had been a woman transformed into the shape of a pillar. Here, therefore, they stood looking and looking upon it, but could not for a time tell what they should make thereof. At last Hopeful espied, written above upon the head thereof, a writing in an unusual hand ; but he, being no scholar, called to Christian (for he was learned) to see if he could pick out the meaning. So he came ; and, after a little laying of letters together, he found the same to be this, “ Remember Lot’s wife.” So he read it to his fellow ; after which they both concluded that that was the pillar of salt into which Lot’s wife was turned, for her looking back with a covetous heart when she was going from Sodom for safety. Which sudden and amazing sight gave them occasion for this discourse.

CHR. Ah, my brother, this is a seasonable sight. It came opportunely to us after the invitation which Demas gave us to come over to view the hill Lucre ; and had we gone over, as he desired us, and as thou wast inclining to do, my brother, we had, for aught I know, been made, like this woman, a spectacle for those that shall come after to behold.


HOPE. I am sorry that I was so foolish, and am made to wonder that I am not now as Lot’s wife ; for wherein was the difference ’twixt her sin and mine ? She only looked back ; and I had a desire to go see. Let grace be adored ; and let me be ashamed that ever such a thing should be in mine heart.

CHR. Let us take notice of what we see here, for our help for time to come. This woman escaped one judgment, for she fell not by the destruction of Sodom ; yet she was destroyed by another, as we see. She is turned into a pillar of salt.

HOPE. True, and she may be to us both caution and example ; caution, that we should shun her sin, or a sign of what judgment will overtake such as shall not be prevented by this caution. So Korah, Dathan, and Abiram, with the two hundred and fifty men that perished in their sin, did also become a sign or example to beware. But above all I muse at one thing, to wit, how Demas and his fellows can stand so confidently yonder to look for that treasure, which this woman but for looking behind her after (for we read not that she stept one foot out of the way) was turned into a pillar of salt ; especially since the judgment which overtook her did make her an example within sight of where they are ; for they cannot choose but see her, did they but lift up their eyes.

CHR. It is a thing to be wondered at, and it argueth that their hearts are grown desperate in the case ; and I cannot tell who to compare them to so fitly as to them that pick pockets in the presence of the judge, or that will cut purses under the gallows. It is said of the men of Sodom that they were “ sinners exceedingly,” because they were sinners “ before the Lord,” that is, in his eyesight, and notwithstanding the kindnesses that he had showed them ; for the land of Sodom was now like the garden of Eden heretofore. This, therefore, provoked him the more to jealousy, and made their plague as hot as the fire of the Lord out of heaven could make it. And it is most rationally to be concluded that such, even such as these are, that shall sin in the sight, yea, and that too in despite of such examples that are set continually before them, to caution them to the contrary, must be partakers of severest judgments.

HOPE. Doubtless thou hast said the truth ; but what a mercy is it that neither thou, but especially I, am not made myself this example ! This ministreth occasion to us to thank God, to fear before him, and always to remember Lot's wife.



I saw then that they went on their way to a pleasant river, which David the king called the river of God ; but John, the river of the water of life. Now their way lay just upon the bank of the river. Here, therefore, Christian and his companion walked with great delight. They drank also of the water of the river, which was pleasant and enlivening to their weary spirits. Besides, on the banks of this river, on either side, were green trees that bore all manner of fruit ; and the leaves they eat to prevent surfeits and other diseases that are incident to those that heat their blood by travels. On either side of the river was also a meadow, curiously beautified with lilies ; and it was green all the year long. In this meadow they lay down and slept ; for here they might lie down safely. When they awoke they gathered again of the fruit of the trees, and drank again of the water of the river, and then lay down again to sleep. Thus they did several days and nights. Then they sang :

“ Behold ye how these crystal streams do glide,
To comfort pilgrims by the highway-side.
The meadows green, besides their fragrant smell,
Yield dainties for them ; and he that can tell
What pleasant fruit, yea, leaves these trees do yield,
Will soon sell all, that he may buy this field.”

So when they were disposed to go on, for they were not as yet at their journey's end, they eat, and drank, and departed.

Now I beheld in my dream that they had not journeyed far but the river and the way for a time parted, at which they were not a little sorry ; yet they durst not go out of the way. Now the way from the river was rough, and their feet tender by reason of their travels. So the souls of the pilgrims were much discouraged because of the way. Wherefore, still as they went on, they wished for better way. Now a little before them there was on the left hand of the road a meadow and a stile to go over into it ; and that meadow is called By-path meadow. Then said Christian to his fellow, If this meadow lieth along by our wayside, let's go over into it.

Then he went to the stile to see ; and behold a path lay along by the way on the other side of the fence. 'T is according to my wish, said Christian. Here is the easiest going. Come, good Hopeful, and let us go over.

HOPE. But how if this path should lead us out of the way ?

CHR. That 's not like, said the other. Look ; doth it not go along by the wayside ? So Hopeful, being persuaded by his fellow, went after him over the stile. When they were gone over, and were got into the path, they found it very easy for their feet ; and withal they, looking before them, espied a man walking as they did, and his name was Vain-Confidence. So they called after him, and asked him whither that way led. He said, To the Celestial Gate. Look, said Christian, did not I tell you so ? By this you may see we are right. So they followed, and he went before them. But behold the night came on, and it grew very dark, so that they that were behind lost the sight of him that went before.

He, therefore, that went before, Vain-Confidence by name, not seeing the way before him, fell into a deep pit, which was on purpose there made, by the prince of those grounds, to catch vain-glorious fools withal, and was dashed in pieces with his fall.

Now Christian and his fellow heard him fall. So they called to know the matter ; but there was none to answer ; only they heard a groaning. Then said Hopeful, Where are we now ? Then was his fellow silent, as mistrusting that he had led him out of the way ; and now it began to rain, and thunder, and lighten in a very dreadful manner, and the water rose amain.

Then Hopeful groaned in himself, saying, O that I had kept on my way !

CHR. Who could have thought that this path should have led us out of the way ?

HOPE. I was afraid on't at the very first, and therefore gave you that gentle caution. I would have spoke plainer, but that you are older than I.

CHR. Good brother, be not offended. I am sorry I have brought thee out of the way, and that I have put thee into

such eminent danger. Pray, my brother, forgive me ; I did not do it of an evil intent.

HOPE. Be comforted, my brother ; for I forgive thee, and believe, too, that this shall be for our good.

CHR. I am glad I have with me a merciful brother. But we must not stand here. Let's try to go back again.

HOPE. But, good brother, let me go before.

CHR. No, if you please, let me go first, that if there be any danger, I may be first therein, because by my means we are both gone out of the way.

HOPE. No, said Hopeful, you shall not go first ; for your mind, being troubled, may lead you out of the way again. Then for their encouragement they heard the voice of one saying, "Let thine heart be towards the highway, even the way that thou wentest. Turn again." But by this time the waters were greatly risen, by reason of which the way of going back was very dangerous. (Then I thought that it is easier going out of the way when we are in than going in when we are out.) Yet they adventured to go back ; but it was so dark, and the flood was so high, that in their going back they had like to have been drowned nine or ten times.

Neither could they, with all the skill they had, get again to the stile that night. Wherefore at last, lighting under a little shelter, they sat down there till the day brake ; but, being weary, they fell asleep. Now there was, not far from the place where they lay, a castle, called Doubting Castle, the owner whereof was Giant Despair ; and it was in his grounds they now were sleeping. Wherefore he, getting up in the morning early, and walking up and down in his fields, caught Christian and Hopeful asleep in his grounds. Then with a grim and surly voice he bid them awake, and asked them whence they were, and what they did in his grounds. They told him they were pilgrims, and that they had lost their way. Then said the giant, You have this night trespassed on me by trampling in and lying on my grounds ; and therefore you must go along with me. So they were forced to go, because he was stronger than they. They also had but little to say ; for they knew

themselves in a fault. The giant, therefore, drove them before him, and put them into his castle, into a very dark dungeon, nasty and stinking to the spirits of these two men. Here, then, they lay from Wednesday morning till Saturday night, without one bit of bread or drop of drink, or light, or any to ask how they did. They were, therefore, here in evil case, and were far from friends and acquaintance. Now in this place Christian had double sorrow, because 't was through his unadvised counsel that they were brought into this distress.

Now Giant Despair had a wife, and her name was Diffidence. So when he was gone to bed he told his wife what he had done, to wit, that he had taken a couple of prisoners, and cast them into his dungeon for trespassing on his grounds. Then he asked her also what he had best to do further to them. So she asked him what they were, whence they came, and whither they were bound; and he told her. Then she counselled him that when he arose in the morning he should beat them without mercy. So when he arose he getteth him a grievous crab-tree cudgel, and goes down into the dungeon to them, and there first falls to rating of them as if they were dogs, although they gave him never a word of distaste. Then he falls upon them and beats them fearfully, in such sort that they were not able to help themselves, or to turn them upon the floor. This done, he withdraws and leaves them there to condole their misery, and to mourn under their distress. So all that day they spent the time in nothing but sighs and bitter lamentations. The next night she, talking with her husband about them further, and understanding that they were yet alive, did advise him to counsel them to make away themselves. So when morning was come he goes to them in a surly manner, as before, and, perceiving them to be very sore with the stripes that he had given them the day before, he told them that since they were never like to come out of that place, their only way would be forthwith to make an end of themselves, either with knife, halter, or poison; for why, said he, should you choose life, seeing it is attended with so much

bitterness? But they desired him to let them go. With that he looked ugly upon them and, rushing to them, had doubtless made an end of them himself, but that he fell into one of his fits (for he sometimes in sunshiny weather fell into fits), and lost for a time the use of his hand. Wherefore he withdrew, and left them as before to consider what to do. Then did the prisoners consult between themselves whether it was best to take his counsel or no; and thus they began to discourse.

CHR. Brother, said Christian, what shall we do? The life that we now live is miserable. For my part, I know not whether is best, to live thus, or to die out of hand. My soul chooseth strangling rather than life; and the grave is more easy for me than this dungeon. Shall we be ruled by the giant?

HOPE. Indeed our present condition is dreadful, and death would be far more welcome to me than thus for ever to abide; but yet let us consider the Lord of the country to which we are going hath said, "Thou shalt do no murder," no, not to another man's person. Much more, then, are we forbidden to take his counsel to kill ourselves. Besides, he that kills another can but commit murder upon his body; but for one to kill himself is to kill body and soul at once. And moreover, my brother, thou talkest of ease in the grave; but hast thou forgotten the hell whither for certain the murderers go? for "no murderer hath eternal life," etc. And let us consider again that all the law is not in the hand of Giant Despair. Others, so far as I can understand, have been taken by him as well as we, and yet have escaped out of his hand. Who knows but that God, that made the world, may cause that Giant Despair may die, or that, at some time or other, he may forget to lock us in, or but he may, in a short time, have another of his fits before us, and may lose the use of his limbs? And if ever that should come to pass again, for my part, I am resolved to pluck up the heart of a man, and to try my utmost to get from under his hand. I was a fool that I did not try to do it before. But, however, my brother, let's be patient,

and endure a while. The time may come that may give us a happy release ; but let us not be our own murderers. With these words Hopeful at present did moderate the mind of his brother. So they continued together in the dark that day, in their sad and doleful condition.

Well, towards evening the giant goes down into the dungeon again, to see if his prisoners had taken his counsel. But when he came there he found them alive ; and truly, alive was all ; for now, what for want of bread and water, and by reason of the wounds they received when he beat them, they could do little but breathe. But, I say, he found them alive ; at which he fell into a grievous rage, and told them that, seeing they had disobeyed his counsel, it should be worse with them than if they had never been born.

At this they trembled greatly, and I think that Christian fell into a swoond ; but, coming a little to himself again, they renewed their discourse about the giant's counsel, and whether yet they had best take it or no. Now Christian again seemed for doing it ; but Hopeful made his second reply as followeth :

HOPE. My brother, said he, remembrest thou not how valiant thou hast been heretofore ? Apollyon could not crush thee, nor could all that thou didst hear, or see, or feel, in the Valley of the Shadow of Death. What hardship, terror, and amazement hast thou already gone through ; and art thou now nothing but fear ? Thou seest that I am in the dungeon with thee, a far weaker man by nature than thou art. Also this giant has wounded me as well as thee, and hath also cut off the bread and water from my mouth ; and with thee I mourn without the light. But let's exercise a little more patience. Remember how thou playedst the man at Vanity Fair, and wast neither afraid of the chain nor cage, nor yet of bloody death. Wherefore let us, at least to avoid the shame that it becomes not a Christian to be found in, bear up with patience as well as we can.

Now night being come again, and the giant and his wife being in bed, she asked him concerning the prisoners, and if they had taken his counsel. To which he replied, They are sturdy

rogues ; they choose rather to bear all hardship than to make away with themselves. Then said she, Take them into the castle-yard to-morrow, and show them the bones and skulls of those that thou hast already despatched, and make them believe, ere a week comes to an end, thou also wilt tear them in pieces, as thou hast done their fellows before them.

So when the morning was come, the giant goes to them again, and takes them into the castle-yard, and shows them as his wife had bidden him. These, said he, were pilgrims, as you are, once, and they trespassed in my grounds, as you have done, and when I thought fit I tore them in pieces ; and so within ten days I will do you. Get you down to your den again. And with that he beat them all the way thither. They lay, therefore, all day on Saturday in a lamentable case, as before. Now, when night was come, and when Mrs. Diffidence and her husband the giant were got to bed, they began to renew their discourse of their prisoners ; and withal the old giant wondered that he could neither by his blows nor counsel bring them to an end. And with that his wife replied, I fear, said she, that they live in hopes that some will come to relieve them, or that they have picklocks about them, by the means of which they hope to escape. And sayest thou so, my dear ? said the giant. I will therefore search them in the morning.

Well, on Saturday, about midnight, they began to pray, and continued in prayer till almost break of day. Now a little before it was day good Christian, as one half amazed, brake out in this passionate speech : What a fool, quoth he, am I, thus to lie in a stinking dungeon, when I may as well walk at liberty ! I have a key in my bosom, called Promise, that will, I am persuaded, open any lock in Doubting Castle. Then said Hopeful, That's good news. Good brother, pluck it out of thy bosom, and try.

Then Christian pulled it out of his bosom, and began to try at the dungeon-door, whose bolt, as he turned the key, gave back, and the door flew open with ease, and Christian and Hopeful both came out. Then he went to the outward door

that leads into the castle-yard, and with his key opened that door also. After, he went to the iron gate, for that must be opened too ; but that lock went damnable hard ; yet the key did open it. Then they thrust open the gate to make their escape with speed ; but that gate, as it opened, made such a creaking that it waked Giant Despair, who hastily rising to pursue his prisoners, felt his limbs to fail ; for his fits took him again, so that he could by no means go after them. Then they went on, and came to the King's highway, and so were safe, because they were out of his jurisdiction.

Now, when they were gone over the stile, they began to contrive with themselves what they should do at that stile to prevent those that should come after from falling into the hands of Giant Despair. So they consented to erect there a pillar, and to engrave upon the side thereof this sentence : "Over this stile is the way to Doubting Castle, which is kept by Giant Despair, who despiseth the King of the Celestial country, and seeks to destroy his holy pilgrims." Many, therefore, that followed after read what was written, and escaped the danger. This done, they sang as follows :

" Out of the way we went, and then we found
What 't was to tread upon forbidden ground.
And let them that come after have a care,
Lest heedlessness makes them as we to fare ;
Lest they, for trespassing, his prisoners are,
Whose castle's Doubting, and whose name's Despair."

They went then till they came to the Delectable Mountains, which mountains belong to the Lord of that hill of which we have spoken before. So they went up to the mountains, to behold the gardens and orchards, the vineyards and fountains of water, where also they drank and washed themselves, and did freely eat of the vineyards. Now there was on the tops of these mountains shepherds feeding their flocks ; and they stood by the highway-side. The pilgrims, therefore, went to them, and leaning upon their staves, as is common with weary pilgrims when they stand to talk with any by the way, they asked,

Whose Delectable Mountains are these ; and whose be the sheep that feed upon them ?

SHEP. These mountains are Emmanuel's land, and they are within sight of his city ; and the sheep also are his, and he laid down his life for them.

CHR. Is this the way to the Celestial City ?

SHEP. You are just in your way.

CHR. How far is it thither ?

SHEP. Too far for any but those that shall get thither indeed.

CHR. Is the way safe or dangerous ?

SHEP. Safe for those for whom it is to be safe ; but transgressors shall fall therein.

CHR. Is there in this place any relief for pilgrims that are weary and faint in the way ?

SHEP. The Lord of these mountains hath given us a charge not to be forgetful to entertain strangers. Therefore the good of the place is before you.

I saw also in my dream that when the shepherds perceived that they were wayfaring men, they also put questions to them, to which they made answer as in other places, as, Whence came you ? and, How got you into the way ? and, By what means have you so persevered therein ? for but few of them that begin to come hither do show their face on these mountains. But when the shepherds heard their answers, being pleased therewith, they looked very lovingly upon them, and said, Welcome to the Delectable Mountains.

The shepherds, I say, whose names were Knowledge, Experience, Watchful, and Sincere, took them by the hand, and had them to their tents, and made them partake of that which was ready at present. They said, moreover, We would that you should stay here a while, to be acquainted with us, and yet more to solace yourselves with the good of these Delectable Mountains. They then told them that they were content to stay. So they went to their rest that night, because it was very late.

Then I saw in my dream that in the morning the shepherds

called up Christian and Hopeful to walk with them upon the mountains. So they went forth with them and walked a while, having a pleasant prospect on every side. Then said the shepherds one to another, Shall we show these pilgrims some wonders? So when they had concluded to do it, they had them first to the top of a hill called Error, which was very steep on the furthest side, and bid them look down to the bottom. So Christian and Hopeful lookt down, and saw at the bottom several men dashed all to pieces by a fall that they had from the top. Then said Christian, What meaneth this? The shepherds answered, Have you not heard of them that were made to err, by hearkening to Hymeneus and Philetus, as concerning the faith of the resurrection of the body? They answered, Yes. Then said the shepherds, Those that you see lie dashed in pieces at the bottom of this mountain are they; and they have continued to this day unburied, as you see, for an example to others to take heed how they clamber too high, or how they come too near the brink of this mountain.

Then I saw that they had them to the top of another mountain, and the name of that is Caution, and bid them look afar off. Which, when they did, they perceived, as they thought, several men walking up and down among the tombs that were there; and they perceived that the men were blind, because they stumbled sometimes upon the tombs, and because they could not get out from among them. Then said Christian, What means this?

The shepherds then answered, Did you not see, a little below these mountains, a stile that led into a meadow, on the left hand of this way? They answered, Yes. Then said the shepherds, From that stile there goes a path that leads directly to Doubting Castle, which is kept by Giant Despair; and these men (pointing to them among the tombs) came once on pilgrimage, as you do now, even until they came to that same stile. And because the right way was rough in that place, they chose to go out of it into that meadow, and there were taken by Giant Despair, and cast into Doubting Castle, where, after they had awhile been kept in the dungeon, he at last did

put out their eyes, and led them among those tombs, where he has left them to wander to this very day, that the saying of the wise man might be fulfilled, "He that wandereth out of the way of understanding shall remain in the congregation of the dead." Then Christian and Hopeful looked upon one another with tears gushing out, but yet said nothing to the shepherds.

Then I saw in my dream, that the shepherds had them to another place in a bottom, where was a door in the side of an hill; and they opened the door, and bid them look in. They looked in, therefore, and saw that within it was very dark and smoky. They also thought that they heard there a rumbling noise, as of fire, and a cry of some tormented, and that they smelt the scent of brimstone. Then said Christian, What means this? The shepherds told them, This is a by-way to hell, a way that hypocrites go in at; namely, such as sell their birthright with Esau, such as sell their Master with Judas, such as blaspheme the Gospel with Alexander, and that lie and dissemble with Ananias and Sapphira his wife.

Then said Hopeful to the Shepherds, I perceive that these had on them, even every one, a show of pilgrimage, as we have now; had they not?

SHEP. Yes, and held it a long time, too.

HOPE. How far might they go on pilgrimage in their day, since they, notwithstanding, were thus miserably cast away?

SHEP. Some further, and some not so far as these mountains.

Then said the pilgrims one to the other, We had need to cry to the Strong for strength.

SHEP. Aye, and you will have need to use it when you have it, too.

By this time the pilgrims had a desire to go forwards, and the shepherds a desire they should. So they walked together towards the end of the mountains. Then said the shepherds one to another, Let us here show to the pilgrims the gates of the Celestial City, if they have skill to look through our perspective-glass. The pilgrims lovingly accepted the motion. So they had them to the top of an high hill, called Clear, and

gave them their glass to look. Then they tried to look ; but the remembrance of that last thing that the shepherds had showed them made their hands shake, by means of which impediment they could not look steadily through the glass. Yet they thought they saw something like the gate, and also some of the glory of the place. Then they went away, and sang this song :

“ Thus by the shepherds secrets are reveal’d,
Which from all other men are kept conceal’d.
Come to the shepherds, then, if you would see
Things deep, things hid, and that mysterious be.”

When they were about to depart, one of the shepherds gave them a note of the way. Another of them bid them beware of the Flatterer. The third bid them take heed that they sleep not upon the Enchanted Ground. And the fourth bid them God speed. So I awoke from my dream.

And I slept, and dreamed again, and saw the same two pilgrims going down the mountains along the highway towards the city. Now, a little below these mountains, on the left hand, lieth the country of Conceit, from which country there comes into the way in which the pilgrims walked a little crooked lane. Here, therefore, they met with a very brisk lad that came out of that country ; and his name was Ignorance. So Christian asked him from what parts he came, and whither he was going.

IGNOR. Sir, I was born in the country that lieth off there, a little on the left hand, and I am going to the Celestial City.

CHR. But how do you think to get in at the gate, for you may find some difficulty there.

IGNOR. As other good people do, said he.

CHR. But what have you to show at that gate ? that the gate should be opened unto you ?

IGNOR. I know my Lord’s will, and I have been a good liver. I pay every man his own. I pray, fast, pay tithes, and give alms, and have left my country for whither I am going.

CHR. But thou camest not in at the wicket-gate that is at the head of this way. Thou camest in hither through that

same crooked lane, and therefore I fear, however thou mayest think of thyself, when the reckoning-day shall come, thou wilt have laid to thy charge that thou art a thief and a robber, instead of getting admittance into the city.

IGNOR. Gentlemen, ye be utter strangers to me; I know you not. Be content to follow the religion of your country; and I will follow the religion of mine. I hope all will be well. And as for the gate that you talk of, all the world knows that that is a great way off of our country. I cannot think that any man in all our parts doth so much as know the way to it. Nor need they matter whether they do or no, since we have, as you see, a fine, pleasant, green lane, that comes down from our country the next way into the way.

When Christian saw that the man was wise in his own conceit, he said to Hopeful whisperingly, "There is more hopes of a fool than of him;" and said, moreover, "When he that is a fool walketh by the way, his wisdom faileth him, and he saith to every one that he is a fool." What! shall we talk further with him, or outgo him at present, and so leave him to think of what he hath heard already, and then stop again for him afterwards, and see if by degrees we can do any good to him? Then said Hopeful,

"Let Ignorance a little while now muse
On what is said, and let him not refuse
Good counsel to embrace, lest he remain
Still ignorant of what's the chiefest gain."
God saith those that no understanding have,
Although he made them, them he will not save."

HOPE. He further added, It is not good, I think, to say to him all at once. Let us pass him by, if you will, and talk to him anon, even as he is able to bear it.

So they both went on, and Ignorance he came after. Now, when they had passed him a little way, they entered into a very dark lane, where they met a man whom seven devils had bound with seven strong cords, and were a-carrying of him back to the door that they saw on the side of the hill. Now good

Christian began to tremble ; and so did Hopeful, his companion. Yet, as the devils led away the man, Christian looked to see if he knew him ; and he thought it might be one Turn-away, that dwelt in the town of Apostasy. But he did not perfectly see his face, for he did hang his head like a thief that is found ; but, being gone past, Hopeful looked after him, and espied on his back a paper with this inscription, “ Wanton professor, and damnable apostate.”

Then said Christian to his fellow, Now I call to remembrance that which was told me of a thing that happened to a good man hereabout. The name of the man was Little-Faith ; but a good man, and he dwelt in the town of Sincere. The thing was this. At the entering in of this passage there comes down from Broadway-gate a lane, called Dead-Man's lane, so called because of the murders that are commonly done there ; and this Little-Faith going on pilgrimage, as we do now, chanced to sit down there and slept. Now there happened at that time to come down that lane from Broadway-gate three sturdy rogues, and their names were Faint-Heart, Mistrust, and Guilt, three brothers ; and they, espying Little-Faith where he was, came galloping up with speed. Now the good man was just awaked from his sleep, and was getting up to go on his journey. So they came up all to him, and with threatning language bid him stand. At this, Little-Faith lookt as white as a clout, and had neither power to fight nor fly. Then said Faint-Heart, Deliver thy purse ; but he making no haste to do it, for he was loth to lose his money, Mistrust ran up to him and, thrusting his hand into his pocket, pulled out thence a bag of silver. Then he cried out, Thieves, thieves ! With that Guilt, with a great club that was in his hand, strook Little-Faith on the head, and with that blow felled him flat to the ground, where he lay bleeding as one that would bleed to death. All this while the thieves stood by. But at last, they hearing that some were upon the road, and fearing lest it should be one Great-Grace, that dwells in the city of Good-Confidence, they betook themselves to their heels, and left this good man to shift for himself. Now, after a while, Little-Faith

came to himself and, getting up, made shift to scramble on his way. This was the story.

HOPE. But did they take from him all that ever he had ?

CHR. No ; the place where his jewels were they never ransackt. So those he kept still. But, as I was told, the good man was much afflicted for his loss ; for the thieves got most of his spending-money. That which they got not, as I said, were jewels. Also he had a little odd money left, but scarce enough to bring him to his journey's end. Nay, if I was not misinformed, he was forced to beg as he went, to keep himself alive ; for his jewels he might not sell. But beg and do what he could, he went, as we say, with many a hungry belly the most part of the rest of the way.

HOPE. But is it not a wonder they got not from him his certificate, by which he was to receive his admittance at the Celestial Gate ?

CHR. 'Tis a wonder but they got not that, though they mist it not through any good cunning of his ; for he, being dismayed by their coming upon him, had neither power nor skill to hide any thing. So 't was more by good providence than by his endeavor that they mist of that good thing.

HOPE. But it must needs be a comfort to him that they got not this jewel from him.

CHR. It might have been great comfort to him, had he used it as he should ; but they that told me the story said that he made but little use of it all the rest of the way, and that because of the dismay that he had in the taking away his money. Indeed, he forgot it a great part of the rest of his journey ; and besides, when at any time it came into his mind, and he began to be comforted therewith, then would fresh thoughts of his loss come again upon him, and these thoughts would swallow up all.

HOPE. Alas, poor man ! this could not but be a great grief unto him.

CHR. Grief ? Aye, a grief indeed ! Would it not have been so to any of us, had we been used as he, to be robbed and wounded too, and that in a strange place, as he was ?

'T is a wonder he did not die with grief, poor heart ! I was told that he scattered almost all the rest of the way with nothing but doleful and bitter complaints, telling, also, to all that overtook him, or that he overtook in the way as he went, where he was robbed, and how, who they were that did it, and what he had lost, how he was wounded, and that he hardly escaped with life.

HOPE. But 't is a wonder that his necessity did not put him upon selling or pawning some of his jewels, that he might have therewith to relieve himself in his journey.

CHR. Thou talkest like one upon whose head is the shell to this very day. For what should he pawn them ? or to whom should he sell them ? In all that country where he was robbed his jewels were not accounted of ; nor did he want that relief which could from thence be administred to him. Besides, had his jewels been missing at the gate of the Celestial City, he had (and that he knew well enough) been excluded from an inheritance there ; and that would have been worse to him than the appearance and villainy of ten thousand thieves.

HOPE. Why art thou so tart, my brother ? Esau sold his birthright, and that for a mess of pottage ; and that birthright was his greatest jewel ; and if he, why might not Little-Faith do so too ?

CHR. Esau did sell his birthright indeed, and so do many besides, and by so doing exclude themselves from the chief blessing, as also that caitiff did ; but you must put a difference betwixt Esau and Little-Faith, and also betwixt their estates. Esau's birthright was typical ; but Little-Faith's jewels were not so. Esau's belly was his god ; but Little-Faith's belly was not so. Esau's want lay in his fleshly appetite ; Little-Faith's did not so. Besides, Esau could see no further than to the fulfilling of his lusts ; for I am at the point to die, said he ; and what good will this birthright do me ? But Little-Faith, though it was his lot to have but a little faith, was by his little faith kept from such extravagancies, and made to see and prize his jewels more than to sell them, as Esau did his birthright. You read not anywhere

that Esau had faith, no, not so much as a little. Therefore no marvel, where the flesh only bears sway, as it will in that man where no faith is to resist, if he sells his birthright, and his soul and all, and that to the devil of hell ; for it is with such as it is with the ass, who in her occasions cannot be turned away. When their minds are set upon their lusts, they will have them, whatever they cost. But Little-Faith was of another temper. His mind was on things divine ; his livelihood was upon things that were spiritual, and from above. Therefore to what end should he that is of such a temper sell his jewels, had there been any that would have bought them, to fill his mind with empty things ? Will a man give a penny to fill his belly with hay ? or can you persuade the turtledove to live upon carrion, like the crow ? Though faithless ones can, for carnal lusts, pawn, or mortgage, or sell what they have, and themselves outright to boot, yet they that have faith, saving faith, though but a little of it, cannot do so. Here, therefore, my brother, is thy mistake.

HOPE. I acknowledge it ; but yet your severe reflection had almost made me angry.

CHR. Why, I did but compare thee to some of the birds that are of the brisker sort, who will run to and fro in untrodden paths with the shell upon their heads. But pass by that, and consider the matter under debate ; and all shall be well betwixt thee and me.

HOPE. But, Christian, these three fellows, I am persuaded in my heart, are but a company of cowards. Would they have run else, think you, as they did, at the noise of one that was coming on the road ? Why did not Little-Faith pluck up a greater heart ? He might, methinks, have stood one brush with them, and have yielded when there had been no remedy.

CHR. That they are cowards, many have said ; but few have found it so in the time of trial. As for a great heart, Little-Faith had none ; and I perceive by thee, my brother, hadst thou been the man concerned, thou art but for a brush, and then to yield. And, verily, since this is the height of thy stomach now they are at a distance from us, should they

appear to thee as they did to him, they might put thee to second thoughts.

But consider again that they are but journeymen thieves. They serve under the king of the bottomless pit, who, if need be, will come to their aid himself; and his voice is as the roaring of a lion. I myself have been engaged as this Little-Faith was; and I found it a terrible thing. These three villains set upon me; and I beginning like a Christian to resist, they gave but a call, and in came their master. I would, as the saying is, have given my life for a penny, but that, as God would have it, I was clothed with armor of proof. Aye, and yet, though I was so harnessed, I found it hard work to quit myself like a man. No man can tell what in that combat attends us, but he that hath been in the battle himself.

HOPE. Well, but they ran, you see, when they did but suppose that one Great-Grace was in the way.

CHR. True, they have often fled, both they and their master, when Great-Grace hath but appeared; and no marvel, for he is the King's champion. But I trow you will put some difference between Little-Faith and the King's champion. All the King's subjects are not his champions; nor can they, when tried, do such feats of war as he. Is it meet to think that a little child should handle Goliath as David did? or that there should be the strength of an ox in a wren? Some are strong, some are weak; some have great faith, some have little. This man was one of the weak, and therefore he went to the walls.

HOPE. I would it had been Great-Grace, for their sakes.

CHR. If it had been he, he might have had his hands full; for I must tell you that, though Great-Grace is excellent good at his weapons, and has, and can, so long as he keeps them at sword's point, do well enough with them, yet if they get within him, even Faint-Heart, Mistrust, or the other, it shall go hard but they will throw up his heels. And when a man is down, you know, what can he do? Whoso looks well upon Great-Grace's face will see those scars and cuts there

that shall easily give demonstration of what I say. Yea, once I heard that he should say, and that when he was in the combat, We despaired even of life. How did these sturdy rogues and their fellows make David groan, mourn, and roar ! Yea, Heman, and Hezekiah too, though champions in their day, were forced to bestir them when by these assaulted ; and yet, notwithstanding, they had their coats soundly brushed by them. Peter, upon a time, would go try what he could do ; but though some do say of him that he is the prince of the apostles, they handled him so that they made him at last afraid of a sorry girl.

Besides, their king is at their whistle ; he is never out of hearing ; and if at any time they be put to the worst, he, if possible, comes in to help them. And of him it is said, "The sword of him that layeth at him cannot hold, the spear, the dart, nor the habergeon. He esteemeth iron as straw, and brass as rotten wood. The arrow cannot make him fly ; sling-stones are turned with him into stubble. Darts are counted as stubble ; he laugheth at the shaking of a spear." What can a man do in this case ? 'T is true, if a man could at every turn have Job's horse, and had skill and courage to ride him, he might do notable things. "For his neck is clothed with thunder. He will not be afraid as the grasshopper. The glory of his nostrils is terrible. He paweth in the valley, rejoiceth in his strength, and goeth out to meet the armed men. He mocketh at fear, and is not affrighted ; neither turneth back from the sword. The quiver rattleth against him, the glittering spear and the shield. He swalloweth the ground with fierceness and rage ; neither believeth he that it is the sound of the trumpet. He saith among the trumpets, Ha, ha ! and he smelleth the battle afar off, the thundring of the captains, and the shoutings."

But for such footmen as thee and I are, let us never desire to meet with an enemy, nor vaunt as if we could do better, when we hear of others that have been foiled, nor be tickled at the thoughts of our own manhood ; for such commonly come by the worst when tried. Witness Peter, of whom I

made mention before. He would swagger, aye, he would. He would, as his vain mind prompted him to say, do better and stand more for his Master than all men. But who so foiled and run down by those villains as he?

When, therefore, we hear that such robberies are done on the King's highway, two things become us to do : first, to go out harnessed, and to be sure to take a shield with us ; for it was for want of that that he that laid so lustily at Leviathan could not make him yield ; for, indeed, if that be wanting, he fears us not at all. Therefore he that had skill hath said, "Above all take the shield of faith, wherewith ye shall be able to quench all the fiery darts of the wicked." 'Tis good, also, that we desire of the King a convoy, yea, that he will go with us himself. This made David rejoice when in the Valley of the Shadow of Death ; and Moses was rather for dying where he stood than to go one step without his God. O my brother, if he will but go along with us, what need we be afraid of ten thousands that shall set themselves against us ? But without him the proud helpers fall under the slain.

I, for my part, have been in the fray before now ; and though, through the goodness of Him that is best, I am, as you see, alive, yet I cannot boast of any manhood. Glad shall I be if I meet with no more such brunts, though I fear we are not got beyond all danger. However, since the lion and the bear have not as yet devoured me, I hope God will also deliver us from the next uncircumcised Philistine. Then sang Christian,

"Poor Little-Faith ! hast been among the thieves ?
Wast robb'd ? Remember this, whoso believes,
And get more faith. Then shall you victors be
Over ten thousand — else scarce over three."

So they went on, and Ignorance followed. They went then till they came at a place where they saw a way put itself into their way, and seemed withal to lie as straight as the way which they should go ; and here they knew not which of the two to take, for both seemed straight before them. Therefore here they stood still to consider. And as they were thinking

about the way, behold a man black of flesh, but covered with a very light robe, came to them and asked them why they stood there. They answered they were going to the Celestial City, but knew not which of these ways to take. "Follow me," said the man; "it is thither that I am going." So they followed him in the way that but now came into the road, which by degrees turned, and turned them so far from the city that they desired to go to that in a little time their faces were turned away from it. Yet they followed him. But by and by, before they were aware, he led them both within the compass of a net, in which they were both so entangled that they knew not what to do; and with that the white robe fell off the black man's back. Then they saw where they were. Wherefore there they lay crying some time, for they could not get themselves out.

CHR. Then said Christian to his fellow, now do I see myself in an error. Did not the shepherds bid us beware of the flatterers? As is the saying of the wise man, so we have found it this day: "A man that flattereth his neighbor spreadeth a net for his feet."

HOPE. They also gave us a note of directions about the way, for our more sure finding thereof; but therein we have also forgotten to read, and have not kept ourselves from the paths of the destroyer. Here David was wiser than we; for, saith he, "Concerning the works of men, by the word of thy lips I have kept me from the paths of the destroyer." Thus they lay bewailing themselves in the net. At last they espied a Shining One coming towards them with a whip of small cord in his hand. When he was come to the place where they were, he asked them whence they came, and what they did there. They told him that they were poor pilgrims going to Sion, but were led out of their way by a black man clothed in white, who bid us, said they, follow him, for he was going thither too. Then said he with the whip, It is Flatterer, a false apostle, that hath transformed himself into an angel of light. So he rent the net, and let the men out. Then said he to them, Follow me, that I may set you in your way again.

So he led them back to the way which they had left to follow the Flatterer. Then he asked them, saying, Where did you lie the last night? They said, With the shepherds upon the Delectable Mountains. He asked them then if they had not of them shepherds a note of direction for the way. They answered, Yes. But did you, said he, when you were at a stand, pluck out and read your note? They answered, No. He asked them, Why? They said they forgot. He asked, moreover, if the shepherds did not bid them beware of the Flatterer. They answered, Yes; but we did not imagine, said they, that this fine-spoken man had been he.

Then I saw in my dream, that he commanded them to lie down; which when they did, he chastised them sore, to teach them the good way wherein they should walk. And as he chastised them, he said, "As many as I love, I rebuke and chasten. Be zealous, therefore, and repent." This done, he bids them go on their way, and take good heed to the other directions of the shepherds. So they thanked him for all his kindness, and went softly along the right way, singing,

Come hither, you that walk along the way;
 See how the pilgrims fare that go astray.
 They caught are in an entangled net,
 'Cause they good counsel lightly did forget.
 'Tis true, they rescued were; but yet, you see,
 They're scourged to boot. Let this your caution be."

Now after a while they perceived afar off one coming softly and alone all along the highway to meet them. Then said Christian to his fellow, Yonder is a man with his back towards Sion; and he is coming to meet us.

HOPE. I see him. Let us take heed to ourselves now, lest he should prove a flatterer also. So he drew nearer and nearer, and at last came up unto them. His name was Atheist; and he asked them whither they were going.

CHR. We are going to the Mount Sion.

Then Atheist fell into a very great laughter.

CHR. What is the meaning of your laughter?

ATHEIST. I laugh to see what ignorant persons you are, to take upon you so tedious a journey, and yet are like to have nothing but your travel for your pains.

CHR. Why, man, do you think we shall not be received?

ATHEIST. Received! There is not such a place as you dream of in all this world.

CHR. But there is in the world to come.

ATHEIST. When I was at home in mine own country I heard as you now affirm, and from that hearing went out to see, and have been seeking this city twenty years, but find no more of it than I did the first day I set out.

CHR. We have both heard and believe that there is such a place to be found.

ATHEIST. Had not I, when at home, believed, I had not come thus far to seek; but, finding none (and yet I should, had there been such a place to be found, for I have gone to seek it further than you), I am going back again, and will seek to refresh myself with the things that I then cast away for hopes of that which I now see is not.

CHR. Then said Christian to Hopeful his companion, Is it true which this man hath said?

HOPE. Take heed; he is one of the Flatterers. Remember what it cost us once already for our hearkning to such kind of fellows. What! no Mount Sion? Did we not see from the Delectable Mountains the gate of the city? Also, are we not now to walk by faith? Let us go on, said Hopeful, lest the man with the whip overtake us again. You should have taught me that lesson, which I will round you in the ears withal: "Cease, my son, to hear the instruction that causeth to err from the words of knowledge." I say, my brother, cease to hear him, and let us believe to the saving of the soul.

CHR. My brother, I did not put the question to thee for that I doubted of the truth of our belief myself, but to prove thee, and to fetch from thee a fruit of the honesty of thy heart. As for this man, I know that he is blinded by the god of this world. Let thee and I go on, knowing that we have belief of the truth; and no lie is of the truth.

HOPE. Now do I rejoice in hope of the glory of God. So they turned away from the man ; and he, laughing at them, went his way.

I saw then in my dream that they went on until they came into a certain country whose air naturally tended to make one drowsy, if he came a stranger into it. And here Hopeful began to be very dull and heavy of sleep. Wherefore he said unto Christian, I do now begin to grow so drowsy that I can scarcely hold up mine eyes. Let us lie down here and take one nap.

CHR. By no means, said the other, lest, sleeping, we never awake more.

HOPE. Why, my brother ? Sleep is sweet to the laboring man. We may be refreshed, if we take a nap.

CHR. Do you not remember that one of the shepherds bid us beware of the Enchanted Ground ? He meant by that that we should beware of sleeping. Wherefore let us not sleep, as do others ; but let us watch and be sober.

HOPE. I acknowledge myself in a fault ; and had I been here alone, I had by sleeping run the danger of death. I see it is true that the wise man saith, "Two are better than one." Hitherto hath thy company been my mercy ; and thou shalt have a good reward for thy labor.

CHR. Now, then, said Christian, to prevent drowsiness in this place, let us fall into good discourse.

HOPE. With all my heart, said the other.

CHR. Where shall we begin ?

HOPE. Where God began with us. But do you begin, if you please.

CHR. I will sing you first this song :

"When saints do sleepy grow, let them come hither,
And hear how these two pilgrims talk together.
Yea, let them learn of them in any wise
Thus to keep ope their drowsy, slumb'ring eyes.
Saints' fellowship, if it be managed well,
Keeps them awake, and that in spite of hell."

Then Christian began and said, I will ask you a question. How came you to think at first of doing what you do now ?

HOPE. Do you mean, how came I at first to look after the good of my soul ?

CHR. Yes, that is my meaning.

HOPE. I continued a great while in the delight of those things which were seen and sold at our fair, — things which I believe now would have, had I continued in them still, drowned me in perdition and destruction.

CHR. What things were they ?

HOPE. All the treasures and riches of the world. Also I delighted much in rioting, revelling, drinking, swearing, lying, uncleanness, sabbath-breaking, and what not, that tended to destroy the soul. But I found at last, by hearing and considering of things that are divine, which, indeed, I heard of you, as also of beloved Faithful that was put to death for his faith and good living in Vanity Fair, that the end of these things is death, and that for these things' sake the wrath of God cometh upon the children of disobedience.

CHR. And did you presently fall under the power of this conviction ?

HOPE. No, I was not willing presently to know the evil of sin, nor the damnation that follows upon the commission of it, but endeavored, when my mind at first began to be shaken with the word, to shut mine eyes against the light thereof.

CHR. But what was the cause of your carrying of it thus to the first workings of God's blessed Spirit upon you ?

HOPE. The causes were : 1. I was ignorant that this was the work of God upon me ; I never thought that by awakenings for sin God at first begins the conversion of a sinner ; 2. sin was yet very sweet to my flesh, and I was loth to leave it ; 3. I could not tell how to part with mine old companions, their presence and actions were so desirable unto me ; 4. the hours in which convictions were upon me were such troublesome and such heart-affrighting hours that I could not bear, no, not so much as the remembrance of them upon my heart.

CHR. Then, as it seems, sometimes you got rid of your trouble.

HOPE. Yes, verily, but it would come into my mind again ; and then I should be as bad, nay, worse than I was before.

CHR. Why, what was it that brought your sins to mind again ?

HOPE. Many things ; as,

1. if I did but meet a good man in the streets ; or,
2. if I have heard any read in the Bible ; or,
3. if my head did begin to ache ; or,
4. if I were told that some of my neighbors were sick ; or,
5. if I heard the bell toll for some that were dead ; or,
6. if I thought of dying myself ; or,
7. if I heard that sudden death happened to others ;
8. but especially when I thought of myself, that I must quickly come to judgment.

CHR. And could you at any time, with ease, get off the guilt of sin, when by any of these ways it came upon you ?

HOPE. No, not I ; for then they got faster hold of my conscience ; and then, if I did but think of going back to sin, though my mind was turned against it, it would be double torment to me.

CHR. And how did you do then ?

HOPE. I thought I must endeavor to mend my life ; or else, thought I, I am sure to be damned.

CHR. And did you endeavor to mend ?

HOPE. Yes, and fled from, not only my sins, but sinful company too, and betook me to religious duties, as praying, reading, weeping for sin, speaking truth to my neighbors, etc. These things did I, with many others, too much here to relate.

CHR. And did you think yourself well then ?

HOPE. Yes, for a while ; but at the last my trouble came tumbling upon me again, and that over the neck of all my reformation.

CHR. How came that about, since you were now reformed ?

HOPE. There were several things brought it upon me, especially such sayings as these : “ All our righteousnesses are

Lucc. 17-18

as filthy rags." "By the works of the law no man shall be justified." ("When you have done all things, say, We are unprofitable," — with many more such like.) From whence I began to reason with myself thus : If all my righteousnesses are filthy rags, if by the deeds of the law no man can be justified, and if, when we have done all, we are yet unprofitable, then 't is but a folly to think of heaven by the law. I further thought thus : If a man runs an hundred pounds into the shopkeeper's debt, and after that shall pay for all that he shall fetch, yet if his old debt stand still in the book uncrossed, for that the shopkeeper may sue him, and cast him into prison till he shall pay the debt.

CHR. Well, and how did you apply this to yourself ?

HOPE. Why, I thought thus with myself : I have by my sins run a great way into God's book, and that my now reforming will not pay off that score. Therefore I should think still, under all my present amendments, But how shall I be freed from that damnation that I brought myself in danger of by my former transgressions ?

CHR. A very good application ; but pray go on.

HOPE. Another thing that hath troubled me even since my late amendments is that if I look narrowly into the best of what I do now, I still see sin, new sin, mixing itself with the best of that I do ; so that now I am forced to conclude that, notwithstanding my former fond conceits of myself and duties, I have committed sin enough in one duty to send me to hell, though my former life had been faultless.

CHR. And what did you do then ?

HOPE. Do ! I could not tell what to do, until I broke my mind to Faithful ; for he and I were well acquainted. And he told me that unless I could obtain the righteousness of a man that never had sinned, neither mine own, nor all the righteousness of the world, could save me.

CHR. And did you think he spake true ?

HOPE. Had he told me so when I was pleased and satisfied with mine own amendments, I had called him fool for his pains ; but now, since I see my own infirmity, and the sin

which cleaves to my best performance, I have been forced to be of his opinion.

CHR. But did you think, when at first he suggested it to you, that there was such a man to be found, of whom it might justly be said that he never committed sin?

HOPE. I must confess the words at first sounded strangely; but after a little more talk and company with him I had full conviction about it.

CHR. And did you ask him what man this was, and how you must be justified by him?

HOPE. Yes, and he told me it was the Lord Jesus, that dwelleth on the right hand of the Most High. And thus, said he, you must be justified by him, even by trusting to what he hath done by himself in the days of his flesh, and suffered when he did hang on the tree. I asked him further how that man's righteousness could be of that efficacy to justify another before God. And he told me he was the mighty God, and did what he did, and died the death also, not for himself, but for me, to whom his doings, and the worthiness of them, should be imputed, if I believed on him.

CHR. And what did you do then?

HOPE. I made my objections against my believing, for that I thought he was not willing to save me. *No. - 1-18*

CHR. And what said Faithful to you then?

HOPE. He bid me go to him and see. Then I said it was presumption. He said, No; for I was invited to come. Then he gave me a book of Jesus his inditing, to encourage me the more freely to come; and he said concerning that book that every jot and tittle thereof stood firmer than heaven and earth. Then I asked him what I must do when I came; and he told me I must entreat upon my knees, with all my heart and soul, the Father to reveal him to me. Then I asked him further how I must make my supplication to him; and he said, Go, and thou shalt find him upon a mercy-seat, where he sits all the year long to give pardon and forgiveness to them that come. I told him that I knew not what to say when I came; and he bid me say to this effect: God be merciful to me a

sinner, and make me to know and believe in Jesus Christ ; for I see that if his righteousness had not been, or I have not faith in that righteousness, I am utterly cast away. Lord, I have heard that thou art a merciful God, and hast ordained that thy Son Jesus Christ should be the Saviour of the world, and moreover that thou art willing to bestow him upon such a poor sinner as I am — and I am a sinner indeed. Lord, take therefore this opportunity, and magnify thy grace in the salvation of my soul, through thy son Jesus Christ. Amen.

CHR. And did you do as you were bidden ?

HOPE. Yes, over, and over, and over.

CHR. And did the Father reveal the Son to you ?

HOPE. Not at the first, nor second, nor third, nor fourth, nor fifth, no, nor at the sixth time, neither.

CHR. What did you do then ?

HOPE. What ? why, I could not tell what to do.

CHR. Had you not thoughts of leaving off praying ?

HOPE. Yes ; an hundred times twice told.

CHR. And what was the reason you did not ?

HOPE. I believed that that was true which had been told me, to wit, that without the righteousness of this Christ, all the world could not save me ; and therefore, thought I with myself, if I leave off, I die, and I can but die at the throne of grace. And withal this came into my mind, “ If it tarry, wait for it, because it will surely come, and will not tarry.” So I continued praying until the Father showed me his Son.

CHR. And how was he revealed unto you ?

HOPE. I did not see him with my bodily eyes, but with the eyes of mine understanding ; and thus it was. One day I was very sad, I think sadder than at any one time in my life ; and this sadness was through a fresh sight of the greatness and vileness of my sins. And as I was then looking for nothing but hell, and the everlasting damnation of my soul, suddenly, as I thought, I saw the Lord Jesus look down from heaven upon me, and saying, “ Believe on the Lord Jesus Christ, and thou shalt be saved.” But, I replied, Lord, I am a great, a very great sinner ; and he answered, “ My grace is sufficient for

thee." Then I said, But, Lord, what is believing? And then I saw from that saying, "He that cometh to me shall never hunger, and he that believeth on me shall never thirst," that believing and coming was all one, and that he that came, that is, that run out in his heart and affections after salvation by Christ, he indeed believed in Christ. Then the water stood in mine eyes, and I asked further, But, Lord, may such a great sinner as I am be indeed accepted of thee, and be saved by thee? And I heard him say, "And him that cometh to me, I will in nowise cast out." Then I said, But how, Lord, must I consider of thee in my coming to thee, that my faith may be placed aright upon thee? Then he said, "Christ Jesus came into the world to save sinners." He is the end of the law for righteousness to every one that believes. He died for our sins, and rose again for our justification. He loved us, and washed us from our sins in his own blood. He is Mediator between God and us. He ever liveth to make intercession for us. From all which I gathered that I must look for righteousness in his person, and for satisfaction for my sins by his blood, that what he did in obedience to his Father's law and in submitting to the penalty thereof was not for himself, but for him that will accept it for his salvation and be thankful. And now was my heart full of joy, mine eyes full of tears, and mine affections running over with love to the name, people, and ways of Jesus Christ.

CHR. This was a revelation of Christ to your soul indeed. But tell me particularly what effect this had upon your spirit.

HOPE. It made me see that all the world, notwithstanding all the righteousness thereof, is in a state of condemnation. It made me see that God the Father, though he be just, can justly justify the coming sinner. It made me greatly ashamed of the vileness of my former life, and confounded me with the sense of mine own ignorance; for there never came thought into my heart before now that showed me so the beauty of Jesus Christ. It made me love a holy life, and long to do something for the honor and glory of the name of the Lord Jesus. Yea, I thought that had I now a thousand gallons of

blood in my body, I could spill it all for the sake of the Lord Jesus.

I saw then in my dream that Hopeful looked back and saw Ignorance, whom they had left behind, coming after. Look, said he to Christian, how far yonder youngster loitereth behind.

CHR. Aye, aye, I see him. He careth not for our company.

HOPE. But I trow it would not have hurt him, had he kept pace with us hitherto.

CHR. That's true; but I warrant you he thinketh otherwise.

HOPE. That I think he doth; but, however, let us tarry for him. So they did.

Then Christian said to him, Come away, man; why do you stay so behind?

IGNOR. I take my pleasure in walking alone, even more a great deal than in company, unless I like it the better.

Then said Christian to Hopeful, but softly, Did I not tell you he cared not for our company? But however, said he, come up, and let us talk away the time in this solitary place. Then, directing his speech to Ignorance, he said, Come, how do you do? How stands it between God and your soul now?

IGNOR. I hope, well; for I am always full of good motions, that come into my mind to comfort me as I walk.

CHR. What good motions? Pray tell us.

IGNOR. Why, I think of God and heaven.

CHR. So do the devils and damned souls.

IGNOR. But I think of them and desire them.

CHR. So do many that are never like to come there. The soul of the sluggard desires, and hath nothing.

IGNOR. But I think of them, and leave all for them.

CHR. That I doubt; for leaving of all is an hard matter, yea, a harder matter than many are aware of. But why, or by what, art thou persuaded that thou hast left all for God and heaven?

IGNOR. My heart tells me so.

CHR. The wise man says, He that trusts his own heart is a fool.

IGNOR. This is spoken of an evil heart ; but mine is a good one.

CHR. But how dost thou prove that ?

IGNOR. It comforts me in hopes of heaven.

CHR. That may be through its deceitfulness ; for a man's heart may minister comfort to him in the hopes of that thing for which he yet has no ground to hope.

IGNOR. But my heart and life agree together ; and therefore my hope is well grounded.

CHR. Who told thee that thy heart and life agree together ?

IGNOR. My heart tells me so.

CHR. " Ask my fellow if I be a thief." Thy heart tells thee so ! Except the word of God beareth witness in this matter, other testimony is of no value.

IGNOR. But is it not a good heart that has good thoughts ? and is not that a good life that is according to God's commandments ?

CHR. Yes, that is a good heart that hath good thoughts, and that is a good life that is according to God's commandments ; but it is one thing indeed to have these, and another thing only to think so.

IGNOR. Pray, what count you good thoughts, and a life according to God's commandments ?

CHR. There are good thoughts of divers kinds ; some respecting ourselves, some God, some Christ, and some other things.

IGNOR. What be good thoughts respecting ourselves ?

CHR. Such as agree with the word of God.

IGNOR. When does our thoughts of ourselves agree with the word of God ? *H*

CHR. When we pass the same judgment upon ourselves which the word passes. To explain myself, the word of God saith of persons in a natural condition, " There is none righteous, there is none that doth good." It saith also that every imagination of the heart of man is only evil, and that continually ;

and again, "The imagination of man's heart is evil from his youth." Now, then, when we think thus of ourselves, having sense thereof, then are our thoughts good ones, because according to the word of God.

IGNOR. I will never believe that my heart is thus bad.

CHR. Therefore thou never hadst one good thought concerning thyself in thy life. But let me go on. As the word passeth a judgment upon our heart, so it passeth a judgment upon our ways; and when our thoughts of our hearts and ways agree with the judgment which the word giveth of both, then are both good, because agreeing thereto.

IGNOR. Make out your meaning.

CHR. Why, the word of God saith that man's ways are crooked ways, not good, but perverse. It saith they are naturally out of the good way, that they have not known it. Now when a man thus thinketh of his ways, I say when he doth sensibly and with heart-humiliation thus think, then hath he good thoughts of his own ways, because his thoughts now agree with the judgment of the word of God.

IGNOR. What are good thoughts concerning God?

CHR. Even, as I have said concerning ourselves, when our thoughts of God do agree with what the word saith of him; and that is, when we think of his being and attributes as the word hath taught; of which I cannot now discourse at large. But to speak of him with reference to us, then we have right thoughts of God when we think that he knows us better than we know ourselves, and can see sin in us when and where we can see none in ourselves; when we think he knows our inmost thoughts, and that our heart, with all its depths, is always open unto his eyes; also when we think that all our righteousness stinks in his nostrils, and that therefore he cannot abide to see us stand before him in any confidence, even in all our best performances.

IGNOR. Do you think that I am such a fool as to think that God can see no further than I, or that I would come to God in the best of my performances?

CHR. Why, how dost thou think in this matter?

IGNOR. Why, to be short, I think I must believe in Christ for justification.

CHR. How ! think thou must believe in Christ, when thou seest not thy need of him ! Thou neither seest thy original or actual infirmities ; but hast such an opinion of thyself, and of what thou doest, as plainly renders thee to be one that did never see a necessity of Christ's personal righteousness to justify thee before God. How, then, dost thou say, I believe in Christ ?

IGNOR. I believe well enough, for all that.

CHR. How dost thou believe ?

IGNOR. I believe that Christ died for sinners, and that I shall be justified before God from the curse, through his gracious acceptance of my obedience to his law. Or thus, Christ makes my duties that are religious acceptable to his Father by virtue of his merits ; and so shall I be justified.

CHR. Let me give an answer to this confession of thy faith.

1. Thou believest with a fantastical faith ; for this faith is nowhere described in the word.

2. Thou believest with a false faith ; because it taketh justification from the personal righteousness of Christ, and applies it to thy own.

3. This faith maketh not Christ a justifier of thy person, but of thy actions ; and of thy person for thy actions' sake, which is false.

4. Therefore this faith is deceitful, even such as will leave thee under wrath in the day of God Almighty ; for true justifying faiths puts the soul, as sensible of its lost condition by the law, upon flying for refuge unto Christ's righteousness. Which righteousness of his is not an act of grace by which he maketh, for justification, thy obedience accepted with God, but his personal obedience to the law, in doing and suffering for us what that required at our hands. This righteousness, I say, true faith accepteth, under the skirt of which the soul being shrouded, and by it presented as spotless before God, it is accepted, and acquit from condemnation.

IGNOR. What ! would you have us trust to what Christ in

his own person has done without us? This conceit would loosen the reins of our lust, and tolerate us to live as we list; for what matter how we live, if we may be justified by Christ's personal righteousness from all, when we believe it?

CHR. Ignorance is thy name and as thy name is, so art thou. Even this thy answer demonstrateth what I say. Ignorant thou art of what justifying righteousness is, and as ignorant how to secure thy soul, through the faith of it, from the heavy wrath of God. Yea, thou also art ignorant of the true effects of saving faith in this righteousness of Christ, which is to bow and win over the heart to God in Christ, to love his name, his word, ways, and people, and not as thou ignorantly imaginest.

HOPE. Ask him if ever he had Christ revealed to him from Heaven.

IGNOR. What! you are a man for revelations! I do believe that what both you and all the rest of you say about that matter is but the fruit of distracted brains.

HOPE. Why, man, Christ is so hid in God from the natural apprehensions of the flesh that he cannot by any man be savingly known, unless God the Father reveals him to him.

IGNOR. That is your faith, but not mine. Yet mine, I doubt not, is as good as yours, though I have not in my head so many whimsies as you.

CHR. Give me leave to put in a word. You ought not so slightly to speak of this matter; for this I will boldly affirm, even as my good companion hath done, that no man can know Jesus Christ but by the revelation of the Father. Yea, and faith too, by which the soul layeth hold upon Christ, if it be right, must be wrought by the exceeding greatness of his mighty power; the working of which faith, I perceive, poor Ignorance, thou art ignorant of. Be awakened, then; see thine own wretchedness, and fly to the Lord Jesus; and by his righteousness, which is the righteousness of God (for he himself is God), thou shalt be delivered from condemnation.

IGNOR. You go so fast I cannot keep pace with you. Do you go on before. I must stay a while behind.

Then they said,

“ Well, Ignorance, wilt thou yet foolish be,
To slight good counsel, ten times given thee ?
And if thou yet refuse it, thou shalt know,
Ere long, the evil of thy doing so.
Remember, man, in time. Stoop ; do not fear.
Good counsel, taken well, saves. Therefore hear.
But if thou yet shalt slight it, thou wilt be
The loser, Ignorance, I'll warrant thee.”

Then Christian addressed thus himself to his fellow :

CHR. Well, come, my good Hopeful, I perceive that thou and I must walk by ourselves again.

So I saw in my dream that they went on apace before, and Ignorance he came hobbling after. Then said Christian to his companion, it pities me much for this poor man. It will certainly go ill with him at last.

HOPE. Alas ! there are abundance in our town in his condition, whole families, yea, whole streets, and that of pilgrims too ; and if there be so many in our parts, how many, think you, must there be in the place where he was born ?

CHR. Indeed, the word saith, “ He hath blinded their eyes, lest they should see,” etc.

But, now we are by ourselves, what do you think of such men ? Have they at no time, think you, convictions of sin, and so, consequently, fears that their state is dangerous ?

HOPE. Nay, do you answer that question yourself ; for you are the elder man.

CHR. Then I say sometimes, as I think, they may ; but they, being naturally ignorant, understand not that such convictions tend to their good, and therefore they do desperately seek to stifle them, and presumptuously continue to flatter themselves in the way of their own hearts.

HOPE. I do believe, as you say, that fear tends much to men's good, and to make them right at their beginning to go on pilgrimage.

CHR. Without all doubt it doth, if it be right ; for so says the word, “ The fear of the Lord is the beginning of wisdom.”

HOPE. How will you describe right fear ?

CHR. True or right fear is discovered by three things :

1. by its rise ; it is caused by saving convictions for sin ;
2. it driveth the soul to lay fast hold of Christ for salvation ;

3. it begetteth and continueth in the soul a great reverence of God, his word, and ways, keeping it tender and making it afraid to turn from them to the right hand or to the left to any thing that may dishonor God, break its peace, grieve the Spirit, or cause the enemy to speak reproachfully.

HOPE. Well said. I believe you have said the truth. Are we now almost got past the Enchanted Ground ?

CHR. Why ? are you weary of this discourse ?

HOPE. No, verily, but that I would know where we are.

CHR. We have not now above two miles further to go thereon. But let us return to our matter.

Now the ignorant know not that such convictions as tend to put them in fear are for their good ; and therefore they seek to stifle them.

HOPE. How do they seek to stifle them ?

CHR. 1. They think that those fears are wrought by the devil, though indeed they are wrought of God ; and, thinking so, they resist them as things that directly tend to their overthrow. 2. They also think that these fears tend to the spoiling of their faith, when, alas for them ! poor men that they are, they have none at all ; and therefore they harden their hearts against them. 3. They presume they ought not to fear ; and therefore, in despite of them, wax presumptuously confident. 4. They see that those fears tend to take away from them their pitiful old self-holiness ; and therefore they resist them with all their might.

HOPE. I know something of this myself ; for before I knew myself it was so with me.

CHR. Well, we will leave, at this time, our neighbor Ignorance by himself, and fall upon another profitable question.

HOPE. With all my heart ; but you shall still begin.

CHR. Well then, did you know, about ten years ago, one

Temporary in your parts, who was a forward man in religion then ?

HOPE. Know him ! yes ; he dwelt in Graceless, a town about two miles off of Honesty, and he dwelt next door to one Turnback.

CHR. Right ; he dwelt under the same roof with him. Well, that man was much awakened once. I believe that then he had some sight of his sins and of the wages that was due thereto.

HOPE. I am of your mind ; for, my house not being above three miles from him, he would oftentimes come to me, and that with many tears. Truly I pitied the man, and was not altogether without hope of him ; but one may see it is not every one that cries, " Lord, Lord ! "

CHR. He told me once that he was resolved to go on pilgrimage, as we go now ; but all of a sudden he grew acquainted with one Save-self, and then he became a stranger to me.

HOPE. Now, since we are talking about him, let us a little inquire into the reason of the sudden backsliding of him and such others.

CHR. It may be very profitable ; but do you begin.

HOPE. Well, then, there are, in my judgment, four reasons for it :

1. Though the consciences of such men are awakened, yet their minds are not changed. Therefore, when the power of guilt weareth away, that which provoketh them to be religious ceaseth. Wherefore they naturally turn to their old course again. Even as we see the dog that is sick of what he hath eaten, so long as his sickness prevails, he vomits and casts up all, — not that he doth this of a free mind (if we may say a dog has a mind), but because it troubleth his stomach ; but now, when his sickness is over, and so his stomach eased, his desires being not at all alienate from his vomit, he turns him about, and licks up all ; and so it is true which is written, " The dog is turned to his own vomit again." This, I say, being hot for heaven, by virtue only of the sense and fear of the torments of hell, as their sense of hell and the fears of

damnation chills and cools, so their desires for heaven and salvation cool also. So then it comes to pass that when their guilt and fear is gone, their desires for heaven and happiness die, and they return to their course again.

2. Another reason is, they have slavish fears that do overmaster them. I speak now of the fears that they have of men ; “ For the fear of man bringeth a snare.” So then, though they seem to be hot for heaven so long as the flames of hell are about their ears, yet, when that terror is a little over, they betake themselves to second thoughts, namely, that ’t is good to be wise, and not to run, for they know not what, the hazard of losing all, or at least of bringing themselves into unavoidable and unnecessary troubles ; and so they fall in with the world again.

3. The shame that attends religion lies also as a block in their way. They are proud and haughty ; and religion in their eye is low and contemptible. Therefore when they have lost their sense of hell and the wrath to come, they return again to their former course.

4. Guilt, and to meditate terror, are grievous to them. They like not to see their misery before they come into it, though perhaps the sight of it at first, if they loved that sight, might make them fly whither the righteous fly and are safe ; but because they do, as I hinted before, even shun the thoughts of guilt and terror, therefore, when once they are rid of their awakenings about the terrors and wrath of God, they harden their hearts gladly, and choose such ways as will harden them more and more.

CHR. You are pretty near the business ; for the bottom of all is for want of a change in their mind and will. And therefore they are but like the felon that standeth before the judge. He quakes and trembles, and seems to repent most heartily ; but the bottom of all is the fear of the halter, not that he hath any detestation of the offence, as it is evident, because, let but this man have his liberty, and he will be a thief and so a rogue still, whereas, if his mind was changed, he would be otherwise.

HOPE. Now I have showed you the reasons of their going back, do you show me the manner thereof.

CHR. So I will willingly.

1. They draw off their thoughts, all that they may, from the remembrance of God, death, and judgment to come.

2. Then they cast off by degrees private duties, as closet prayer, curbing their lusts, watching, sorrow for sin, and the like.

3. Then they shun the company of lively and warm Christians.

4. After that, they grow cold to public duty, as hearing, reading, godly conference, and the like.

5. They then begin to pick holes, as we say, in the coats of some of the godly, and that devilishly, that they may have a seeming color to throw religion, for the sake of some infirmity they have spied in them, behind their backs.

6. Then they begin to adhere to, and associate themselves with, carnal, loose, and wanton men.

7. Then they give way to carnal and wanton discourses in secret; and glad are they if they can see such things in any that are counted honest, that they may the more boldly do it through their example.

8. After this they begin to play with little sins openly.

9. And then, being hardened, they show themselves as they are. Thus, being launched again into the gulf of misery, unless a miracle of grace prevent it, they everlastingly perish in their own deceivings.

Now I saw in my dream that by this time the pilgrims were got over the Enchanted Ground, and entering in the country of Beulah, whose air was very sweet and pleasant. The way lying directly through it, they solaced themselves there for a season. Yea, here they heard continually the singing of birds, and saw every day the flowers appear in the earth, and heard the voice of the turtle in the land. In this country the sun shineth night and day. Wherefore this was beyond the Valley of the Shadow of Death, and also out of the reach of Giant Despair; neither could they from this place

so much as see Doubting Castle. Here they were within sight of the city they were going to. Also here met them some of the inhabitants thereof; for in this land the shining ones commonly walked, because it was upon the borders of heaven. In this land also the contract between the Bride and the Bridegroom was renewed. Yea, here, "as the bridegroom rejoiceth over the bride, so doth their God rejoice over them." Here they had no want of corn and wine; for in this place they met with abundance of what they had sought for in all their pilgrimage. Here they heard voices from out of the city, loud voices, saying, "Say ye to the daughter of Zion, Behold, thy salvation cometh! Behold, his reward is with him!" Here all the inhabitants of the country called them "the holy people, the redeemed of the Lord, sought out," etc.

Now, as they walked in this land, they had more rejoicing than in parts more remote from the kingdom to which they were bound; and, drawing near to the city, they had yet a more perfect view thereof. It was builded of pearls and precious stones; also the street thereof was paved with gold; so that, by reason of the natural glory of the city and the reflection of the sunbeams upon it, Christian with desire fell sick. Hopeful also had a fit or two of the same disease. Wherefore here they lay by it a while, crying out because of their pangs, "If you see my Beloved, tell him that I am sick of love." But, being a little strengthened, and better able to bear their sickness, they walked on their way, and came yet nearer and nearer, where were orchards, vineyards, and gardens, and their gates opened into the highway. Now, as they came up to these places, behold the gardener stood in the way; to whom the pilgrims said, Whose goodly vineyards and gardens are these? He answered, They are the King's, and are planted here for his own delights, and also for the solace of pilgrims. So the gardener had them into the vineyards, and bid them refresh themselves with the dainties. He also showed them there the King's walks and the arbors where he delighted to be; and here they tarried and slept.

Now I beheld in my dream, that they talked more in their sleep at this time than ever they did in all their journey ; and, being in a muse thereabout, the gardener said even to me, Wherefore musest thou at the matter ? It is the nature of the fruit of the grapes of these vineyards "to go down so sweetly as to cause the lips of them that are asleep to speak."

So I saw that when they awoke, they addressed themselves to go up to the city. But, as I said, the reflections of the sun upon the city (for the city was pure gold) was so extremely glorious that they could not as yet with open face behold it, but through an instrument made for that purpose. So I saw that as they went on there met them two men in raiment that shone like gold ; also their faces shone as the light. These men asked the pilgrims whence they came ; and they told them. They also asked them where they had lodged, what difficulties and dangers, what comforts and pleasures, they had met in the way ; and they told them. Then said the men that met them, You have but two difficulties more to meet with, and then you are in the city. Christian then and his companion asked the men to go along with them. So they told them that they would ; but, said they, you must obtain it by your own faith. So I saw in my dream that they went on together till they came in sight of the gate.

Now I further saw that betwixt them and the gate was a river ; but there was no bridge to go over. The river was very deep. At the sight, therefore, of this river the pilgrims were much stunned ; but the men that went with them said, You must go through, or you cannot come at the gate. The pilgrims then began to inquire if there was no other way to the gate. To which they answered, Yes ; but there hath not any, save two, to wit, Enoch and Elijah, been permitted to tread that path since the foundation of the world ; nor shall until the last trumpet shall sound. The pilgrims then, especially Christian, began to despond in his mind, and looked this way and that, but no way could be found by them by which they might escape the river. Then they asked the men if the waters were all of a depth. They said, No ; yet they

could not help them in that case ; for, said they, you shall find it deeper or shallower as you believe in the King of the place.

They then addressed themselves to the water and, entring, Christian began to sink, and, crying out to his good friend Hopeful, he said, I sink in deep water ; the billows go over my head ; all his waves go over me. Selah. Then said the other, Be of good cheer, my brother. I feel the bottom ; and it is good. Then said Christian, Ah ! my friend, the sorrows of death have compassed me about. I shall not see the land that flows with milk and honey. And with that a great darkness and horror fell upon Christian, so that he could not see before him. Also here he in a great measure lost his senses, so that he could neither remember nor orderly talk of any of those sweet refreshments that he had met with in the way of his pilgrimage. But all the words that he spake still tended to discover that he had horror of mind, and heart-fears that he should die in that river, and never obtain entrance in at the gate. Here also, as they that stood by perceived, he was much in the troublesome thoughts of the sins that he had committed, both since and before he began to be a pilgrim. 'T was also observed that he was troubled with apparitions of hobgoblins and evil spirits ; for ever and anon he would intimate so much by words.

✕ Hopeful, therefore, here had much ado to keep his brother's head above water. Yea, sometimes he would be quite gone down ; and then, ere a while, he would rise up again half dead. Hopeful did also endeavor to comfort him, saying, Brother, I see the gate, and men standing by to receive us ; but Christian would answer, 'T is you, 't is you they wait for ; for you have been hopeful ever since I knew you. And so have you, said he to Christian. Ah ! brother, said he, surely if I was right, he would now arise to help me ; but for my sins he hath brought me into the snare, and hath left me. Then said Hopeful, My brother, you have quite forgot the text where it's said of the wicked, "There is no band in their death ; but their strength is firm. They are not troubled as other men ; neither are they plagued like other men." These

troubles and distresses that you go through in these waters are no sign that God hath forsaken you, but are sent to try you, whether you will call to mind that which heretofore you have received of his goodness, and live upon him in your distresses.

Then I saw in my dream that Christian was in a muse a while. To whom also Hopeful added this word, Be of good cheer ; Jesus Christ maketh thee whole. And with that Christian brake out with a loud voice, Oh ! I see him again ; and he tells me, " When thou passest through the waters, I will be with thee, and through the rivers, they shall not overflow thee." Then they both took courage ; and the enemy was after that as still as a stone, until they were gone over. Christian, therefore, presently found ground to stand upon ; and so it followed that the rest of the river was but shallow. Thus they got over.

Now upon the bank of the river, on the other side, they saw the two shining men again, who there waited for them. Wherefore, being come out of the river, they saluted them, saying, We are ministring spirits, sent forth to minister for those that shall be heirs of salvation. Thus they went along towards the gate.

Now you must note that the city stood upon a mighty hill ; but the pilgrims went up that hill with ease, because they had these two men to lead them up by the arms. Also they had left their mortal garments behind them in the river ; for, though they went in with them, they came out without them. They therefore went up here with much agility and speed, though the foundation upon which the city was framed was higher than the clouds. They therefore went up through the regions of the air, sweetly talking as they went, being comforted because they safely got over the river, and had such glorious companions to attend them.

The talk that they had with the shining ones was about the glory of the place ; who told them that the beauty and glory of it was inexpressible. There, said they, is the " Mount Sion, the heavenly Jerusalem, the innumerable company of angels, and the spirits of just men made perfect." You are going now,

said they, to the paradise of God, wherein you shall see the tree of life, and eat of the never-fading fruits thereof; and when you come there you shall have white robes given you, and your walk and talk shall be every day with the King, even all the days of eternity. There you shall not see again such things as you saw when you were in the lower region upon the earth; to wit, sorrow, sickness, affliction, and death; "for the former things are passed away." You are going now to Abraham, to Isaac, and Jacob, and to the prophets, men that God hath taken away from the evil to come, and that are now "resting upon their beds, each one walking in his righteousness." The men then asked, What must we do in the holy place? To whom it was answered, You must there receive the comforts of all your toil, and have joy for all your sorrow. You must reap what you have sown, even the fruit of all your prayers and tears and sufferings for the King by the way. In that place you must wear crowns of gold, and enjoy the perpetual sight and visions of the Holy One; for there you shall see him as he is. There also you shall serve him continually with praise, with shouting and thanksgiving, whom you desired to serve in the world, though with much difficulty, because of the infirmity of your flesh. There your eyes shall be delighted with seeing, and your ears with hearing the pleasant voice of the Mighty One. There you shall enjoy your friends again that are gone thither before you; and there you shall with joy receive even every one that follows into the holy place after you. There also you shall be clothed with glory and majesty, and put into an equipage fit to ride out with the King of Glory. When he shall come with sound of trumpet in the clouds, as upon the wings of the wind, you shall come with him; and when he shall sit upon the throne of judgment, you shall sit by him. Yea, and when he shall pass sentence upon all the workers of iniquity, let them be angels or men, you also shall have a voice in that judgment, because they were his and your enemies. Also, when he shall again return to the city, you shall go too with sound of trumpet, and be ever with him.

Now, while they were thus drawing towards the gate, behold a company of the heavenly host came out to meet them ; to whom it was said by the other two shining ones, These are the men that have loved our Lord when they were in the world, and that have left all for his holy name ; and he hath sent us to fetch them, and we have brought them thus far on their desired journey, that they may go in and look their Redeemer in the face with joy. Then the heavenly host gave a great shout, saying, "Blessed are they that are called to the marriage-supper of the Lamb." There came out also at this time to meet them several of the King's trumpeters, clothed in white and shining raiment, who, with melodious noises and loud, made even the heavens to echo with their sound. These trumpeters saluted Christian and his fellow with ten thousand welcomes from the world ; and this they did with shouting and sound of trumpet.

This done, they compassed them round on every side. Some went before, some behind, and some on the right hand, and some on the left, as 't were to guard them through the upper regions, continually sounding as they went, with melodious noise, in notes on high, so that the very sight was to them that could behold it as if heaven itself was come down to meet them. Thus, therefore, they walked on together ; and, as they walked, ever and anon these trumpeters, even with joyful sound, would, by mixing their music with looks and gestures, still signify to Christian and his brother how welcome they were into their company, and with what gladness they came to meet them. And now were these two men, as 't were, in heaven before they came at it, being swallowed up with the sight of angels, and with hearing of their melodious notes. Here also they had the city itself in view ; and they thought they heard all the bells therein to ring, to welcome them thereto. But, above all, the warm and joyful thoughts that they had about their own dwelling there with such company, and that for ever and ever, oh ! by what tongue or pen can their glorious joy be expressed ? Thus they came up to the gate.

Now when they were come up to the gate, there was written over it, in letters of gold, "*Blessed are they that do his commandments, that they may have right to the tree of life, and may enter in through the gates into the city.*"

Then I saw in my dream that the shining men bid them call at the gate; the which when they did, some from above looked over the gate, to wit, Enoch, Moses, and Elijah, etc., to whom it was said, These pilgrims are come from the City of Destruction, for the love that they bear to the King of this place; and then the pilgrims gave in unto them each man his certificate, which they had received in the beginning. Those, therefore, were carried in to the King, who, when he had read them, said, Where are the men? To whom it was answered, They are standing without the gate. The King then commanded to open the gate, "that the righteous nation," said he, "that keepeth the truth may enter in."

Now I saw in my dream that these two men went in at the gate; and lo! as they entered they were transfigured; and they had raiment put on that shone like gold. There was also that met them with harps and crowns, and gave them to them; the harps to praise withal, and the crowns in token of honor. Then I heard in my dream that all the bells in the city rang again for joy, and that it was said unto them, "*Enter ye into the joy of your lord.*" I also heard the men themselves, that they sang with a loud voice, saying, "*Blessing, honor, glory, and power, be to him that sitteth upon the throne, and unto the lamb, for ever and ever.*"

Now, just as the gates were opened to let in the men, I looked in after them, and behold the city shone like the sun. The streets also were paved with gold; and in them walked many men, with crowns on their heads, palms in their hands, and golden harps, to sing praises withal. There were also of them that had wings; and they answered one another without intermission, saying, Holy, holy, holy is the Lord. And after that they shut up the gates; which, when I had seen, I wished myself among them.

Now, while I was gazing upon all these things, I turned my

head to look back, and saw Ignorance come up to the river side ; but he soon got over, and that without half that difficulty which the other two men met with. For it happened that there was then in that place one Vain-Hope, a ferryman, that with his boat helped him over. So he, as the other, I saw did ascend the hill, to come up to the gate. Only he came alone ; neither did any man meet him with the least encouragement. When he was come up to the gate, he looked up to the writing that was above, and then began to knock, supposing that entrance should have been quickly administered to him ; but he was asked by the men that lookt over the top of the gate, Whence come you ? and what would you have ? He answered, I have eat and drank in the presence of the King ; and he has taught in our streets. Then they asked him for his certificate, that they might go in and show it to the King. So he fumbled in his bosom for one, and found none. Then said they, Have you none ? but the man answered never a word. So they told the King ; but he would not come down to see him, but commanded the two shining ones that conducted Christian and Hopeful to the city to go out and take Ignorance, and bind him hand and foot, and have him away. Then they took him up, and carried him through the air to the door that I saw in the side of the hill, and put him in there. Then I saw that there was a way to hell even from the gate of heaven, as well as from the City of Destruction. So I awoke, and behold it was a dream.

THE CONCLUSION

Now, reader, I have told my dream to thee,
See if thou canst interpret it to me,
Or to thyself, or neighbor. But take heed
Of misinterpreting ; for that, instead
Of doing good, will but thyself abuse.
By misinterpreting, evil ensues.

Take heed, also, that thou be not extreme
In playing with the outside of my dream ;
Nor let my figure or similitude
Put thee into a laughter, or a feud.
Leave this for boys and fools ; but as for thee
Do thou the substance of my matter see.

Put by the curtains ; look within my veil ;
Turn up my metaphors ; and do not fail
There, if thou seekest them, such things to find
As will be helpful to an honest mind.

What of my dross thou findest there, be bold
To throw away, but yet preserve the gold.
What if my gold be wrapped up in ore ?
None throws away the apple for the core.
But if thou shalt cast all away as vain,
I know not but 't will make me dream again.

NOTES

I. NOTE ON BOOKS OF REFERENCE.

THE most important book for most purposes is *John Bunyan, His Life, Times, and Work*, by John Brown, B.A., Minister of the Church at Bunyan Meeting, Bedford (Boston and New York, Houghton, Mifflin & Co., 1885, pp. xii-498). This is sufficient in itself, and is the only thorough and original study of the facts. The Life by Canon Venables (*Great Writers Series*, London, 1888) has a valuable bibliography and a convenient chronological list of works. For the rest, it is based mainly, like the same author's article in the *Dictionary of National Biography*, on Brown. Froude's Life (*English Men of Letters Series*) is interesting, but rather shallow.

Of essays on Bunyan, by far the best known is Macaulay's (see any complete collection of his essays). Macaulay's comment on Bunyan's style is more valuable than his interpretation of Bunyan's religious experiences. The latter may be corrected, for teachers interested in psychology, by Professor Royce's study cited above in the Introduction. Coleridge has an essay in *Literary Remains*. Lang's reflections (*Essays in Little*) are trifling. Woodberry's *Three Men of Piety (Studies in Letters and Life)* repays close attention. But by far the best collateral reading for a comprehension of the spirit of *The Pilgrim's Progress* is Bunyan's own *Grace Abounding*.

A facsimile reprint of the first edition of *The Pilgrim's Progress* was published by Elliot Stock in London, 1875. A variorum edition, collating all the additions and variations made by Bunyan successively in the eleven editions published during his life, was made for the Hanserd Knollys Society by George Offor, and published in London, 1847.

The frequent references and allusions to the Bible, which many editions indicate by marginal notes, may be traced readily enough with the aid of a concordance.

The violent changes, political and religious, of Bunyan's time can be comprehended only from standard histories. Some of the graphic passages in Macaulay's history may effectively be read aloud in class.

Special studies are too numerous even to mention; but Dr. John Tulloch's *English Puritanism and its Leaders* (Cromwell, Milton, Baxter, Bunyan) is both popular and substantial. Since wars and politics meant little to Bunyan, attention had better be fixed on the social aspects.

For the study of Bunyan's language references are made in the following sections.

II. NOTES ON BUNYAN'S GRAMMAR.

The irregularities of Bunyan's grammar are due largely to his following colloquial use instead of literary use (page xxv). Any living tongue is undergoing perpetual slight modifications. Changes were more rapid in the centuries before the printing press; for the mass of men using a language in those centuries had no other standard than the speech of their neighbors. So there was often a broad difference between the usage of scholars in books and the usage of common people in speech. Growing languages tend away from book standards and toward actual spoken use. What is colloquial to-day may become literary in the next generation. The Latin that passed on into modern French, Spanish, and Italian was not literary Latin. That died. It was the colloquial Latin of the legionary soldiers, vulgar Latin, "Low Latin."

So soon as the printing press put books into the hands of the people this process was checked. The breach between literary usage and common usage was bridged. It was bridged, not filled. There will always be a difference between spoken use and written use. There is to-day; much more was there in Bunyan's day, when books were comparatively few, common schooling did not go very far, and there were no newspapers. And Bunyan himself, though he could and did read, was educated in language not so much by books as by conversation. His usage, then, is quite different from that of scholars like Milton. It is colloquial; and, being colloquial, it is irregular, changing as spoken language changes, showing both old and new on the same page, and not distinctly conscious of the rules of syntax.

Doubtless Bunyan wrote somewhat more correctly, that is, somewhat more in conformity to literary standards like Milton's, than he talked — but not much. The first edition of *The Pilgrim's Progress* is full of what we call bad grammar. Living to see his book through eleven editions, he gradually corrected many of these colloquial forms. Perhaps more learned friends pointed them out to him. But many others remain. Most of them have been corrected in modern editions. In this edition they stand, so far as possible, as he left them. Therefore a tabular view of his use of words and constructions will show more nearly than would be possible with other authors what actual common English was in his time. It was full of survivals from earlier times; and these give us interesting comparisons with the language of Shakespeare and even of Chaucer. It was full also of new forms; and these often forecast the progress of the language.

No one should be surprised, therefore, to find throughout the following tables signs of wavering or double usage; for these are among the signs of actual life and growth.

For the teacher's private study, comparisons may profitably be made of almost all the cases cited below, by consulting Abbott's *Shakespearian Grammar*, and *Elementary Lessons in Historical English Grammar*, Kellner's *Historical Outlines of English Syntax*, and more special works like Baldwin's *Inflections and Syntax of Malory's Morte d'Arthur*.

The numbers in parenthesis refer to the pages of this book.

NOUNS.

1. The possessive (genitive) case is printed in the earlier editions sometimes with the apostrophe, sometimes without; and a third form is found occasionally: "a book of Jesus his inditing" (130).

2. A collective expression, though plural, may be used with a singular article or (pronoun: "an hundred pounds" (129). This is a survival of earlier use; and is not unknown to-day.

ADJECTIVES AND ADVERBS.

1. The superlative *-est* is added, as in Shakespeare, even to the longer adjectives: "excellentest" (7), "dreadfullest" (57).

2. *Other* sometimes keeps the older plural *other*, as in Shakespeare and the English Bible: "The other replied" (86).

3. The use of an adjective as a plural noun (the rich, the great, etc.) is common to-day. Bunyan sometimes uses it similarly in the singular: "the wise" (man) (83).

4. The use of adverbs and the use of predicate adjectives are apparently confused: "walk solitarily" (12); "spoke plainer" (104); "looked ugly upon them" (107). This last is the regular use of the time with words in *-ly*, which keep the same form as adjectives or as adverbs.

5. Certain short adjectives were regularly used then (and some are now) without change as adverbs. Such are *sore*, *hard*, *scarce*, *fair*. Bunyan sometimes adds *-ly*: "hardly beset" (82).

6. Other adjectives appear freely as adverbs without change: "wonderful well" (71), "new erected" (83), "extraordinary zealous" (96), "damnable hard" (110), "excellent good" (120). This use is familiar in Shakespeare.

PRONOUNS.

1. *His* is still used as genitive of both *he* and *it*: "Every fat must stand upon his own bottom" (38).

2. *Himself* is sometimes used alone as subject: "Himself hath shut me up" (35). On the other hand, the reflexive idea is expressed either by compounds with *self* or by simple personal pronouns: "They were not able to help *themselves* or to turn *them* upon the floor (106)."

3. The dative still shows some vitality: "cried him mercy" (67). Compare, "I shewed them others;" i. e., to others (4); but, on the other hand, "tell to Christian" (35).

4. The cases are sometimes confused: "Let thee and I go" (125), "who to compare them to" (102).

(a) In all these points Bunyan is merely like the literature of his time; but in the last he goes further toward popular freedom: "of them shepherds" (124), "all them are such as he" (*Mr. Badman*). Doubtless his manuscripts would show more instances of this, as of the "you was" which is not uncommon even in his print.

5. *Whether* survives as interrogative: "whether is best" (107).

6. *The which* and *that* (= what) are common as relatives: "hold fast that you have" (82).

7. An older use of *what* ("what by one thing and what by another," 49) is related to a still less familiar use found in *Mr. Badman*: "such are also, what may be, kept out of evil company;" and "estranging their children what they can."

8. The correlation *such . . . as* is expressed also by *such . . . which* and *such . . . that*.

9. The omission of relatives is freer than in modern literary use: "there are many ways, butt down upon this" (28).

10. There is one case of the ellipsis of an indefinite antecedent: "There was also (some) that met them with harps (149). This is like the Latin construction *sunt qui*.

VERBS: INFLECTIONS.

1. In the third person singular *-es(-s)* is far more common than *-eth*; but both may occur in the same sentence: "*getteth* him a . . . cudgel and *goes*" (106).

2. Verbs in *-er* and *-en* often, but not always, omit the *-e* before any inflectional ending: *threatned*, *threatning*, *entred* and *entered*, *wondred* and *wondered*, *thundred*, *lightned*, *hearkning*, *hindreth*, *ministreth*, etc.

3. Verbs in *-s, -sh, -ch, -p,* and *-k* sometimes, but not always, make a preterit in *-t* instead of *-ed*: *kist, dasht, prest, stript, suckt, stopt, stept, catcht, knockt, crusht, prickt, mist*. Here the spelling indicates the pronunciation. The participle is less frequently made in the same way.

4. Occasionally Bunyan has an abbreviated participle from a verb in *-t*: *discontent* (30), *acquit* (136). *Alienate* (140), like some of the similar participles in Shakespeare, suggests the influence of the Latin *-atus*. Bunyan may have caught this from the Bible.

5. The strong verbs, in the main, are as at present. The main difference is in the confusion between preterit inflection and participle inflection (see Lounsbury's *English Language*, pages 420-428), which persisted in literature for several centuries, and is heard even now in common speech. Thus *begun* and *sunk* appear as preterits; *began, drank, and took*, as participles.

6. Participles like *beat, broke, forgot, spoke, writ*, where present use has *-en*, were common long after Bunyan, and are now sometimes admitted in verse.

7. Very few of Bunyan's forms are obsolete: *brast* (57, "Sighs and groans *brast*" is the reading of the first edition), preterit of *burst*; *strook* (67), preterit of *strike*; occasionally *sate*, but usually *sat*; *brake, spake, and sware*, from *break, speak, and swear*.

8. *Bid* (command) almost always makes both preterit and participle *bid*. *Bidden* occurs (109, 131); *bade* seems not to occur.

9. Bunyan makes a strong participle *loaden* (37) from the weak verb *load*, probably after the analogy of *laden*.

10. The defective verb *wit* (31) has preterit *wotted* (21). The first edition has *wot* instead of *wist*. *Wot* is properly present indicative, as in the English Bible.

VERBS: THE INFINITIVE.

1. Now-a-days the infinitive appears without *to* only in certain definite constructions (e. g., after the auxiliaries, *can, will*, etc.), and in those always. In Bunyan's time there was considerably more latitude, *to* being omitted sometimes where we should insert it, and *vice versa*: "Then he asked her what he had best *to do*" (106). "Peter upon a time would go *try*" (121).

2. *For to* is occasionally used instead of *to*: "The danger of going back might be much more than *for to go forward*" (60).

3. The infinitive is often used as object in cases where later use prefers the verbal in *-ing*: "he cannot abide *to see us stand*" (135); "left off *to watch*" (34).

4. The familiar infinitive of result after *such*, *so*, etc., commonly occurs without the intervening *as*: "so loving . . . to receive" (46; i. e., as to receive); "such fools to go" (95); but "so deserving *as* to turn us out of the way" (99).

5. In such cases, instead of the regular present infinitive, seventeenth-century English very often uses a form with *have*: "I would not have been so base *to have given* out" (18; i. e., as to give out).

6. This confusion of tenses is often heard in careless speech to-day. The idea of past time, already expressed in the main verb, is repeated in the infinitive. In Bunyan it is more common in all connections than the regular present infinitive: "thought that the mountain would *have fallen*" (27; i. e., would fall); "needed not to *have trod*" (43; i. e., to tread). So to-day "I should have liked to have been there" is not uncommon colloquially, though condemned by the grammars. That it is due not merely to confusion of tenses, but also to an extension of the use of *have* as auxiliary, is suggested by such survivals as "we did not imagine . . . that this fine-spoken man *had been* (i. e., was) he" (124, where *had* is historically the preterit subjunctive).

VERBS: THE SUBJUNCTIVE.

1. The subjunctive in Bunyan's time, on the one hand, was kept in certain uses where to-day it has been abandoned; and, on the other hand, it was often neglected in uses where to-day it is usually kept. In a word, even literary usage was not settled.

2. One of the few cases in which the subjunctive is regularly used to-day is the "unreal condition," or "condition contrary to fact." Thus we still mark a distinction between "if it was," where we mean to express uncertainty as to whether it was or not, and "if it were," where we mean to imply that it was not. But even literary use in the seventeenth and eighteenth centuries, and part of the nineteenth, disregarding this distinction, quite often used the indicative indifferently for both. Thus in *Mr. Badman* Bunyan misquotes the Bible: "better that a millstone *was* hanged about his neck" (for "*were* hanged"). So "if his mind *was* changed, he would be otherwise" (141).

3. On the other hand, simple conditional sentences usually have the subjunctive (compare § 5). A sentence like the following is exceptional: "He cannot be savingly known unless God . . . *reveals* him" (137). We should expect, from the general literary use of the time, "*reveal*."

4. In like manner, clauses with *lest*, which usually took the sub-

junctive, occasionally show the indicative: "lest the man . . . overtake" (125); but "Lest they . . . his prisoners *are*" (110).

5. Temporal clauses looking to the future follow the usage of conditional clauses (§ 3): "You will never mend till more of you *be* burned" (62); but "*may* . . . cast him into prison till he *shall* pay" (129).

6. The conditional idea may be expressed, as of old and to-day, without a conditional conjunction: "But beg and do what he could, he went . . . with many a hungry belly" (117).

8. See the notes below on *may*, *have*, and *shall*, under *Auxiliaries*.

VERBS: AUXILIARIES.

be

1. *Be* is sometimes used in the indicative plural: "ye *be* utter strangers" (115).

2. Verbs of coming, going, and the like, regularly use *be* as their auxiliary: "was come" (12), "are once got in" (18), "is grown" (62), "be arrived" (82). But *have* is used also: "have gone" (82), "had passed" (86).

have

1. A vulgar confusion still heard appears in "would have had you a sought" (27).

2. The preterit subjunctive *had* (anciently *hadde*), which survives to-day in *had rather*, is used regularly in unreal conditions (conditions contrary to fact): "I do not know what *had* (i. e., would have) become of me, *had* not Evangelist happily met me" (27). "Into that quag King David once did fall, and *had* no doubt therein been smothered, *had* not He that is able pluckt him out" (59).

may

Might is regularly used in elliptical conditional clauses like the following: "His laborers . . . have . . . been employed about this patch of ground, *if perhaps it might have been mended*" (17; i. e., to see if perhaps, in the hope that it might); "went to them if per-adventure he might awake them" (38); "I did . . . look out if perhaps I might mend myself" (54).

must

Must is both present and preterit: "After, he went to the iron gate; for that *must* be opened too" (110); i. e., had to be opened.

shall and will

1. Our present distinctions between *shall* (*should*) and *will* (*would*) are not found in Shakespeare (for earlier use, see Baldwin's *Inflections and Syntax of Malory's Morte d'Arthur*, pages 91-105) or in Bunyan. The original senses of these words are more largely apparent; and, on the other hand, either might apparently be used in almost any application common to the other.

2. "How far is it thither?" (111) asks Christian; and the shepherds reply: "Too far for any but those that *shall* (i. e., are to, are destined to) get thither indeed." This survival of the original sense of *shall* is more familiar to us in the preterit *should*. In Bunyan's use of *should* it is still plainer: "to take the name of him that *should* enter in" (33; i. e., was to, was destined to).

3. The original sense of *will* has been kept more distinctly through the centuries. "Neither *will* it (go) out of my mind" (98) is common to-day. But in Bunyan's time it is equally plain in *would*: "he *would* have had (wished to have) the Holy Ghost" (98); "when the morning was come they *would* know (wished to know) how he did" (12); "Prudence *would* accompany him" (53). "The governor of them *would* have him stay" (31) is subjunctive, like the modern French *voudrait*.

4. The familiar modern use of *would* to express habit or custom is very old: "he *would* be often reading" (40); "he would always be condemning my way" (90). But Bunyan also uses *should* in the same sense: "Yea, once I heard he *should* say, 'We despaired'" (121): "It *would* come into my mind again; and then I *should* be as bad" (128). Though this is not common in *The Pilgrim's Progress*, it is habitual in *Grace Abounding*.

5. Nor is there any general distinction between *shall* (*should*) and *will* (*would*) based on the person of the subject. It is no great exaggeration to say that in most senses either auxiliary may be found in any person: "whoso looks well *will* see those scars . . . that *shall* easily give demonstration" (120. Compare § 2 above). Who could have thought that this path *should* have led us out of the way?" (104). "I *would* have spoke plainer, but that —" (104). In most such cases we discern, not any distinction according to persons, but some survival of an earlier application of the original sense of the verb.

PREPOSITIONS.

Bunyan's use of prepositions, where it is now obsolete, is almost always a survival for which parallels may readily be found in earlier

literature. (A convenient table will be found in Baldwin's *Inflections and Syntax of Malory's Morte d'Arthur*, pages 108-128.) The following are the most common:—

after: "after this burdened manner" (18). We still say "after a fashion."

at: "came *at* the slough" (27; i. e., to).

by: "I perceive *by* thee . . . thou art but for a brush" (119).

for: "he told me I should possess the brave country alone *for* him" (27; i. e., so far as he was concerned).

into: "instruct you *into* (i. e., in) our law" (90).

of: "heavy *of* sleep" (126); "denied myself *of* things" (50); "mist *of* that good" (117).

on (a): "set him *on* work" (64); "the heavens were *on* a burning flame" (35; i. e., aflame); "agone" (83).

to: "putting *to* all his strength" (63). This is the original adverbial use of *to*, as in our modern "*to* and fro," "come *to*" from a swoon, etc.); "a pretty young man *to* his son" (20); "send for thy wife . . . *to* thee" (21).

upon: "I am *upon* my life" (63); "put him *upon* selling" (118); "sat *upon* them" (85; a legal phrase still in use).

with: "his house was maintained *with* . . . dainties" (66); "frighted *with* the sight of the lions" (43).

CONJUNCTIONS.

(See also the following sections on sentence structure.)

but (a) = that . . . not: "We could not think . . . *but* they would . . . pull us to pieces" (42). "I see no reason *but* a man may do this" (96). "I know not *but* some other enemy may be at hand" (58). The essence of this construction is the use of *but* as a preposition (= except, without) with the whole following clause as a noun. Quite similar are: "He had not run far . . . *but* his wife . . . began to cry" (13); "had not journeyed far *but* the river and the way for a time parted" (103).

but (b) = if . . . not: "strain hard *but* they will kill you" (82); "it shall go hard *but* they will throw up his heels" (120); "a hundred to one *but* he dies there" (100).

but that is used in the same connections: (a) "I see no reason *but that* this may be lawfully done" (97); (b) "You cannot think *but that* you know something, what a flattering tongue she had" (65).

except as conjunction (= unless): "he will soon be sick of your company too, *except* God shall touch his heart" (76).

so is used to introduce conditions: "I find not that I am denied the use . . . *so* I no abuse put" (7).

so be is used in the same sense: "I care not what I meet with in the way, *so be* I can also meet with deliverance" (20).

than (conjunction) is distinguished in spelling from *then* (adverb) only in modern reprints of Bunyan's works.

that is used to introduce clauses of result (= so that): "thundred and lightned in most fearful wise, *that* it put me into an agony" (35).

that added to any preposition indicates its use as a conjunction. So we have *for that* (11), *by that* (28), *but that* (see § a under *but*). Some conjunctions make the same addition: "He could not be silent long, *because that* his trouble increased" (11).

As has been explained, the essence of this construction is the use of a preposition with a noun clause. In time the *that* drops away from familiar combinations, leaving the former preposition to act as a full-fledged conjunction. Bunyan uses both forms, with *that* and without, on the same page (e. g., *because* on the same page as *because that*, quoted above); and the double usage lingers in modern colloquial use, especially in *but that*.

SENTENCE STRUCTURE.

(See also the preceding sections under *Conjunctions*).

1. Nicety of sentence structure, being a matter of logic, has never become habitual in any language until the people using the language have developed their prose in a literature of thought. Early literature is a literature of feeling. Usually it is poetry. Some centuries of civilization may elapse before prose is brought to conscious and accurate form in a literature of thought, a literature of reflection, such as we have in essays. The essay, therefore, is a modern form. As essays and other reflective pieces become common, their careful sentences set a standard which gradually becomes binding on all who write prose. Whereas in the earlier stages of the language sentences may have been put together by loose additions, later usage requires more logical subordination. In early prose most sentences are compound, because the compound form is easiest, because it requires no reflection. Complex sentences are a mark of higher intellectual development. And other matters of sentence structure, even some matters that we to-day think of as merely points of correctness in grammar, appear less and less necessary in writing, the further we go back in history.

Now in all such matters the oral use of common speech lags behind the written use of scholars. Even to-day, when the difference between oral use and written use is much less marked than in times when books were not common, we admit in daily speech constructions that we should not call correct in writing. We call them colloquial. We do not write them; but we speak them. Much more, then, we expect, and we find, in Bunyan many constructions that to-day are incorrect and many others that are at least very loose. For the written prose of Bunyan's time was less highly developed than ours; and the spoken prose, which was what he followed (pages xxiii-xxv), was still further behind.

2. The distinction between a sentence and a clause, which is a commonplace of our modern grammar, was felt much less distinctly in the seventeenth century. Where seventeenth-century writers pretty evidently intended to begin a new sentence they quite often used a relative instead of a demonstrative, *which* instead of *that*, *wherefore* instead of *therefore*, etc. And sometimes it is hard to tell whether they intended the following group of words as a sentence or as a clause. Bunyan, of course, used in this the latitude of his time. One of his paragraphs (16) begins: "*Wherefore* Christian was left . . . in the slough . . . but still he endeavored to struggle to that side . . . that was still further from his own house, and next to the wicket-gate; *the which* he did, but could not get out," etc. To-day we should have begun with *therefore*, put a period after *gate*, and begun again, "*This* he did," etc. Similar instances abound.

3. This vagueness as to what we now call sentence unity opened the way in Bunyan's case for many loose colloquial co-ordinations: "Why truly I do not know what had become of me there, had not Evangelist happily met me . . . ; but 't was God's mercy that he came . . . for else I had never come hither; but now I am come . . . ; but Oh! what a favour is this to me, that yet I am admitted!" (27). Punctuation was not yet settled; but no punctuation could make that combination seem logical. It suggests both the stammering haste of Christian's emotion and Bunyan's way of writing as he heard people talk.

4. Naturally, therefore, Bunyan's sentences are often incoherent. Forgetting or ignoring the construction with which he started, he would leave it unfinished, to run into another: "This man then meeting with Christian, and having some inkling of him (for Christian's setting forth . . . was much noised abroad, not only in the town where he dwelt, but also it began to be town talk in some other places) — Master Worldly Wiseman, therefore, having some guess of him . . . began thus to enter into some talk with Chris-

tian" (18). Here not only is the first construction left unfinished, but the long parenthesis that threw it out is itself incoherent.

5. Certain typical cases of Bunyan's incoherence in syntax have survived in vulgar speech:

(a) *double negative*: "I am made to tread those steps thrice over which I needed (*not*) to have trod *but* once" (43).

(b) *disagreement in number between subject and predicate*. In the first edition *you was* is as common as among the ignorant to-day. Later editions, which corrected most of those cases, left such others as the following: "At this fair there is at all times to be seen jugglings, cheats, games," etc. (83). "When does our thoughts . . . agree?" (134). Students of Shakespeare will recall, in *The Merchant of Venice* (I. iii.) "whose own hard dealings teaches them suspect."

(c) *confusion of tense*: "He would have had you a (i.e., have) sought" (27). See sections 5 and 6 under *Infinitive* above.

(d) *confusion of case*. See section 4 under *Pronouns*.

III. NOTES ON PASSAGES.

(These notes are both for explanation and for suggestion. The numbers refer to the pages of this book. For unfamiliar words, see the Glossary, page 180.)

1. For the title, see the note on page 8, below.
3. Chapter XI of Brown's *Life of Bunyan* explains fully the circumstances in which *The Pilgrim's Progress* was composed. Bunyan's first imprisonment (1660-1672) was in the Bedford county jail. As Dr. Brown inferred, and as has since been proved by the discovery of the warrant, there was a second imprisonment of six months (1675-1676) in the town jail on Bedford bridge. There and then, not during the earlier and longer imprisonment, he most probably wrote his great book. It was first published in 1678, having been entered at Stationer's Hall in 1677.

*I, writing of the way
And race of saints in this our gospel day.*

The book referred to is probably *The Strait Gate* (1676).

allegory. Investigate this word, and write a definition with instances.

crown; a typical instance of Bunyan's homeliness (see page xxiv). What difference in effect would be produced by the substitution of some other word; e.g., *head* or *mind*? Note other instances of homeliness, and try similar substitutions.

4. *Thus I set pen to paper with delight.* Is this merely a form of words, or do you think Bunyan really enjoyed writing? Point out a passage in this book that sounds to you as if it had been written "with delight." Does an author's pleasure in his work enhance the pleasure of his readers? How?

having now my method by the end. What is his method? What effect on the whole composition of a piece of literature naturally results from having a method at the start? Does Spenser in his *Faery Queene* seem to have his "method by the end?" Apply these considerations to your own writing.

Offend you I am ioath. See Notes on Grammar, Verbs, Infinitive, § 1.

My end, thy good. See pages ix, x, xxxi.

5. *a pearl . . . in a toad's head.* The fancy appears in many old tales. Compare the familiar opening of the second act of *As You Like It* (II. i. 13):

"Which, like the toad, ugly and venomous,
Wears yet a precious jewel in his head."

it is feigned. The objection to fiction was not confined to its use for religious purposes. Novels were long regarded by many people as frivolous, or even degrading. Defoe, who wrote for readers very like Bunyan's, put forth all his tales as veracious histories.

6. *pins and loops*, etc. The reference is to the symbolism of the Jewish tabernacle and its sacrifices, as set forth in the earlier books of the Old Testament.
8. *direct thee to the Holy Land*; i. e., it is a guide for pilgrims. Investigate in a large dictionary the words *pilgrim* and *saunter*. A pilgrimage to the sacred place of Palestine, and especially to the Holy Sepulchre, was for centuries, and to a lesser degree is still, an act of piety or expiation, and gave rise to not a few books, such as the *Voyage and Travel* formerly attributed to Sir John Mandeville. One of the occasions of the first Crusade was the maltreatment of pilgrims by the Saracens. Pilgrimages were also, and are still, commonly made to the shrines of saints. Chaucer's pilgrims in the *Canterbury Tales* were bound for the tomb of St. Thomas. To-day the most popular places of pilgrimage, next to Jerusalem itself, are Lourdes in France and St. Anne de Beaupré in Canada.
9. The Author's Apology is so far from poetry that it is not even good verse. Its interest is purely biographical.
picking meat; i. e., from nuts.
14. *a company of these craz'd-headed coxcombs*. See page xi.
17. *Then I stepped to him*. In this simple way Bunyan reminds us of the reality of the vision to himself, and increases its reality to us. Compare pages 28 and 33.
20. *Legality*. The futility of "the works of the law" for salvation is frequently affirmed in the epistles of St. Paul, and was doubtless confirmed in Bunyan's mind by his reading of Luther. The scriptural passages may be traced by referring to a concordance under "works of the law."
26. Bunyan rhymes *been* and *within*, thus suggesting our American pronunciation. But Bunyan's rhyming is never very careful.
30. *Now whereas thou sawest*. The language may have been suggested by that of Daniel's interpretation of Nebuchadnezzar's dream. See Daniel ii. 41-43.
33. Can you see this "stately palace" in your mind? Compare other descriptions of places in *The Pilgrim's Progress* (e. g., pages 53, 103, and 142). Are they specific? Can you see Bunyan's places as you see his people? Compare typical passages of de-

scription in Spenser's *Faery Queene*, in *Paradise Lost*, or in a translation of Dante's *Inferno*.

38. *sleep on the top of a mast*, a proverb. See page xxiv. "Lives like a drunken sailor on a mast." *Richard III.* (III. iv. 101).
46. *a dreadful sound . . . in mine ears*. See page xviii.
47. *One . . . hang bleeding*. What, then, did the Pilgrim see? Compare page 37.
50. *of pure love to his country*; an English touch?
56. Professor Genung, in *A Handbook of Rhetorical Analysis*, page 1, has some notes on the diction of this passage. Observe how many of the words are old and familiar.
60. *blasphemies . . . which he thought proceeded from his own mind*. This was one of the worst mental tortures suffered by Bunyan himself, and is vividly described in *Grace Abounding*.
61. *fear none ill*. The King James Bible and the Book of Common Prayer both translate "fear no evil." Bunyan's quotations frequently show minor inaccuracies of this kind. Compare the long quotation from Job at page 121 with the King James version. Doubtless Bunyan quoted habitually from memory.
66. *It came burning hot into my mind*. The vivid expression is like many in *Grace Abounding*. See pages xvii, xviii, xxii.
78. *experimental confession*, etc., Puritan terms. See page xi.
83. *Vanity Fair*. Investigate in a large dictionary the origin and history of the word *fair*. Which of its present uses, the one typified by *church fair* or the one typified by *World's Fair*, is nearer to the original? The successive variations of this word give a good view of the progress of language. Now read in a cyclopedia the article *fairs*, in order to find what a fair was in Bunyan's time. What is the nearest modern American parallel that you have seen? The particular fair that Bunyan very probably had in mind was the great fair in his own neighborhood, the one at Sturbridge, near Cambridge (Brown's *Bunyan*, page 270).

Vanity Fair has become a proverbial expression. Thackeray uses it as the title of his great novel. Why?

84. *The language of Canaan*. See page xi.
- 86-91. *charged — remanded — arraigned — indictment — evidence —* etc. Observe the legal terms in this account, and find their specific meanings. Bunyan was sadly familiar with such processes of law. Compare his account, appended to *Grace Abounding*, of his own arraignment and trial in 1660-1661.
- 95-98. Mr. By-Ends and the case he propounds are typical and significant for any time, but especially for that time of rapid and

radical changes. Frequently as the ordinances of religion shifted from the time of Henry VIII. to the time of William, some men managed to keep abreast for the sake of their benefices. For example, one Simon Aleyn, Canon of Windsor, is said to have remained Vicar of Bray from 1540–1588 by supporting the papacy under Henry VIII. until the King's breach with the Pope, the Protestant party under Edward VI., the papacy again under Mary, and the Protestants again under Elizabeth. Whether the story is historically accurate or not, it was felt to be so substantially true that a trimmer came to be called proverbially a Vicar of Bray. The proverb went, "The Vicar of Bray will be Vicar of Bray still." In time, probably in the eighteenth century, the tradition was embodied in a popular satirical song (see Chappell's *Popular Music of the Olden Time*, volume ii., page 652). The first three stanzas make a lively commentary on Mr. By-Ends and his friends, and a no less lively contrast to Bunyan's own attitude: —

THE VICAR OF BRAY.

In good King Charles's golden days,
 When loyalty no harm meant,
 A zealous high-churchman was I,
 And so I got preferment.
 To teach my flock I never missed
 Kings were by God appointed;
 And damned are those that dare resist,
 Or touch the Lord's anointed.

*And this is law that I'll maintain
 Unto my dying day, sir,
 That, whatsoever King may reign,
 Still I'll be the Vicar of Bray, sir.*

When royal James obtained the crown,
 And popery grew in fashion,
 The penal laws I hooted down,
 And read the Declaration.
 The Church of Rome I found would fit
 Full well my constitution;
 And I had been a Jesuit
 But for the Revolution.

And this is law, etc.

When William was our King declared,
 To ease the nation's grievance,

With this new wind about I steered,
 And swore to him allegiance.
 Old principles I did revoke,
 Set conscience at a distance.
 Passive obedience was a joke;
 A jest was non-resistance.

And this is law, etc.

So the song goes on, perhaps by latter additions, with the reigns of Anne and George I, ending with the words :

And George my lawful King shall be
 Until the times do alter.

And this is law, etc.

97. The case of the tradesman is worked out at length in Bunyan's *Life and Death of Mr Badman*.
106. *a very dark dungeon*. It is not necessary to suppose that Bunyan's own imprisonment was of this sort. There is no record of his being put into a dungeon. But since prisons in his time were generally worse places than are tolerated to-day, his may well have been "nasty and stinking."
109. What is there in the telling of the episode of Giant Despair that makes it more exciting than any other in the book? Is *The Pilgrim's Progress* generally more interesting to you for the story or for the characters?
114. *So I awoke*. The story breaks here. Brown (*Bunyan*, page 262) suggests that the rest of Part I. may have been written later, after Bunyan's release from prison. Is there any difference in the method of telling the rest which makes it less interesting?
120. *throw up his heels*. The whole description is more like the actual fighting of Bunyan's day, whether in war or in village bouts of wrestling and single-stick, than like the combats of romance. Compare it, and also the fight with Apollyon (page 56), with a description of a combat in Malory's *Morte d'Arthur* or Spenser's *Faery Queene*.
121. *Heman*. See 1 Kings iv. 31, and the heading in the King James version to Psalm lxxxviii. The reference so puzzled some earlier critics that they changed the name to Haman, for which Southey thereupon substituted Mordecai (Brown's *Bunyan*, page 272).
 Is the quotation from Job xxxix apt? What is its purpose?
143. *If you see my beloved*." The application is at least no more apt than that of Job's horse above, and no less mystical than that

of the clean beasts at page 75. It inevitably suggests Bunyan's lack of taste. See page xxv.

With this and the description (pages 148-149) of the heavenly city, compare parallel passages in the *Paradise Lost* and Dante's *Paradiso*.

147. *perpetual sight . . . of the Holy One*. "I . . . would often long . . . that the last day were come, that I might be forever inflamed with the sight and joy and communion with Him whose head was crowned with thorns, whose face was spit upon, and body broken, and soul made an offering for my sins" (*Grace Abounding*). Of these two passages, which is the more moving expression? Compare pages 48 (bottom)-49 (top).

IV. SUGGESTIONS FOR FIRST RECITATIONS.

[The idea is to keep biography, history, and all other collateral matter, subsidiary by making the book itself always the first instance. For preparation the pupils should be asked to read pages 11-21, and then to re-read with close attention the first paragraph. The questions below are suggested as typical of an inductive method to arouse interest and direct it to literary aspects. They are all drawn from the first paragraph.]

"wilderness of this world." What is meant by calling the world a wilderness? What kind of man looks at the world so? Where have you met the idea before? (In fine, what does this opening mean as an indication of the kind of book you may expect, and the kind of author?)

"a den." All the earlier editions have as a note in the margin "the jail." The teacher may tell here how the book came to be written in jail, but very briefly, and with a view rather to awaken than to satisfy curiosity. In closing, he may well say: "Bunyan has told the whole story of a previous imprisonment at the end of his *Grace Abounding*."

"dreamed a dream." What, then, is this book? Do you recall any other stories told as dreams? What kind of man would naturally choose a dream as his form of expression? (Lead the answers toward Bunyan's peculiar habit and power of vision, and read the passage quoted from "*Grace Abounding*," at page xviii of the Introduction.) Think of the author, then, as a dreamer, or seer. But in what sense? Is he trying to describe (as, e. g., Poe) the sensations of dreaming? No. What, then? (Lead answers toward discerning the method of allegory or parable; and read an instance from the Bible.)

"a man standing . . . what shall I do?" How does this help us to understand more fully what Bunyan means by "the wilderness of this world"? Here, evidently, is the Pilgrim. The book is about his Progress. What is a pilgrim? In what sense is this man a pilgrim? What is the goal of his pilgrimage or "progress"? What is meant by the scriptural saying that life is a pilgrimage? How many people act as if they thought it a pilgrimage? How many of Christian's town believed this strongly enough to join him on his journey? What does Bunyan mean to imply by this fact? To whom, then, is the book addressed, and what seems to be its pur-

pose? Do you see any point in closing the first paragraph with those words "what shall I do?" This first paragraph, then, sounds the theme of the whole book, giving us an inkling of (1) its kind and form, (2) its purpose, (3) its author.

Let us now see what it reveals of his *style* or language. How does the choice of words strike you? Does Bunyan write as if for the few, for people of learning, or for the many, for common people? Does the language remind you of anything? Why? (Brief hint of Bunyan's familiarity with the English Bible.) What does "contain" mean here?

(Summary.) What topics have we discussed in this recitation? Since these are likely to recur, you will do well to write each one at the head of a page, that you may hereafter group your notes, instead of having to sort them out. (A note-book with detachable leaves facilitates this; but an ordinary note-book will serve, if the pupil repeats a heading on the first blank page each time a page is filled, and finally takes the book apart to rearrange.) Sum up connectedly (topical oral recitation) what we have learned about the book and the author.

(Themes.) Hand in next time a connected account, as above, in writing (100-150 words). Prepare to write in class (ten minutes) an account of the further elucidation of these points that you get from reading the Author's Apology.

(Special Assignments to Individuals, in place of the general assignment.) Write a summary of Bunyan's trial and imprisonment (*Grace Abounding*). Read aloud at home the dialogue between Bunyan and his judges until you can render it clearly and emphatically. Then read it in class to-morrow. Write an account of a mediaeval pilgrimage to Jerusalem (from specified sources). Write an explanation of allegory, with two examples. (Such reports are to be read aloud or, in some cases, spoken from notes. More are suggested here than could well be used at one session.)

(Advance Assignment, to be called for one week from to-day.) Note from the Dictionary of National Biography any three facts of the life of Bunyan that seem to you important for better understanding of *The Pilgrim's Progress*. Select only those facts whose bearing you can explain. (From such reports the class compiles a brief biography. The same method may be applied to topics of contemporary history).

V. SPECIMEN TOPICS FOR REVIEW OR EXAMINATION.

1. Quote a passage exemplifying the homeliness of Bunyan's style, and tell whence this trait arises.

2. Quote two proverbs from *The Pilgrim's Progress*, and two others that you have heard in colloquial use.

3. In what respect is Bunyan's style Biblical?

4. Are the people in *The Pilgrim's Progress* common people or of the upper class? Mention any exceptions. Is there any difference between the good people and the bad in respect to gentility?

5. What is your notion of the character of Obstinate as expressed by his way of talking? Describe him as you see him in your mind. Do the same for Demas.

6. Compare a description of nature in *The Pilgrim's Progress* with one in *The Faery Queene*. Which has the more detail as to color, sound, smell, etc.? Which suggests to your mental vision the clearer picture?

7. Compare a person in *The Pilgrim's Progress* with a similar person in *The Faery Queene*. Which do you see more distinctly? Why? Apply the comparison to some familiar characters in fiction.

8. Show how the opening paragraph of *The Pilgrim's Progress* expresses the theme of the whole. Sum up the theme in a few words.

9. What was Bunyan's object in writing this book? What is his method of achieving this object? Give an instance of the method as used by another author.

10. What is alliteration? Quote an instance from *The Pilgrim's Progress* and one from another author.

11. In what respects is *Pilgrim's Progress* typically English?

12. In what sense may Bunyan be called illiterate? Answer by three instances from *The Pilgrim's Progress* and by some account of his education.

13. Give some reasons for the popularity of *The Pilgrim's Progress*.

[Questions on history.]

14. Who were the Puritans? Mention some passages in *The Pilgrim's Progress* that suggest their ways of thinking, acting, or talking.

15. Why was *The Pilgrim's Progress* especially popular among the colonists of New England? Mention any passage that they may have thought especially applicable to themselves.

16. Mention two other great Puritans in England, and two in America. Mention two other Puritan authors.

17. Describe a religious service in Bunyan's religious community. How did it differ from the services of the Established Church?

18. On what grounds did Bunyan and his friends dissent? What was the state policy that led to Bunyan's imprisonment?

VI. SPECIMEN TOPICS FOR THEMES.

(Some of these topics may be adapted to use among those of the preceding list, and *vice versa*.)

1. Write a paragraph on the popularity of *The Pilgrim's Progress*, telling its extent and some of its causes.

2. Write a definition of allegory in one sentence; a fuller definition, with explanation and instances, in one paragraph.

3. Compare *The Pilgrim's Progress* with another allegory of life as a pilgrimage (two hundred words).

4. Discuss the consistency of *The Pilgrim's Progress* as an allegory; i. e., whether the allegory is carried through clearly and naturally (two hundred words).

5. Write four or five paragraphs (five hundred to seven hundred words) on Bunyan's use of the Bible, considering in coherent order some of the following:—

(a) What translation of the Bible did Bunyan use? When and by whom was it made? Has it had much influence on English religion? on English thought in general? on English literature?

(b) Does Bunyan seem usually to copy texts, or to quote from memory?

(c) In what senses is Bunyan's work Biblical? Mention two passages in *The Pilgrim's Progress* which are derived directly from the Bible, and tell how the Bible is used in them.

(d) Is Bunyan's use of the Bible like that of the Puritans of his time?

(e) Compare Bunyan's use of the Bible with that of some other author.

(f) Does Bunyan seem to have read the Bible as a collection of books, or as a collection of texts? Does he usually speak of books or of separate passages?

6. Write a paragraph setting forth your idea of a Puritan: what he believed, how he looked and acted, why he was disliked, or what he and his fellows accomplished.

7. Write a paragraph of descriptive contrast between a Puritan and a Cavalier.

8. Write a paragraph on *The Pilgrim's Progress* as a classic, defining what you mean by classic.

9. Write a paragraph on the simplicity of Bunyan's style.

10. Write a paragraph on Bunyan's descriptions of scenery and places, comparing them with other descriptions that you admire.

11. Write a paragraph on Bunyan's idea of heaven.
12. Compare the description of the Valley of the Shadow of Death with one of Milton's descriptions (e. g., in Book I. of *Paradise Lost*, or with a description selected from Dante's *Inferno*).
13. Write a character sketch of John Bunyan, not a chronological summary of his life, but an estimate of his character in its most striking traits.
14. Write a character sketch of Mr. By-Ends.
15. Write a character sketch of some real person who reminds you of a person in *The Pilgrim's Progress*. Describe him as to looks, actions, attitudes, speech, etc., and then as to how he is regarded by his companions.
16. Now write a dialogue between this person and a companion, imitating Bunyan's method, but keeping to the language of our own day. Try to make both these persons speak and act according to their characters.
17. Compose in the language and characters of our own day a scene like the one between Christian and Hopeful and Mr. Demas. Make Mr. Demas an unprincipled stock-broker, for instance ; and put the scene in Wall Street. (This exercise may be applied to other scenes of *The Pilgrim's Progress*.)
18. Write in the style of *The Pilgrim's Progress* the dialogue between Little-Faith and the robbers.
19. Write part of the Vanity Fair chapter in the language, characters, and surroundings of our own day, setting the scene at "The Pike" of the St. Louis exposition, at Coney Island, in the Bowery of New York, Kearny Street in San Francisco, Butte in Montana, or some other appropriate place known to you.

VII. CHRONOLOGICAL TABLE.

(Compiled from the lives of Bunyan by Brown and Venables, Ryland's *Chronological Outlines of English Literature*, Whitcomb's *Chronological Outlines of American Literature*, and Tillinghast's translation of Ploetz's *Epitome of Ancient, Mediæval, and Modern History*.)

Bunyan's Life and Works.	Contemporary History.	Contemporary Literature.
	1620. Plymouth Rock.	
1628. Bunyan born at Elstow, near Bedford.	1628. The (English) Petition of Right.	1625. Bacon's Essays (final form).
	1642-46. The (English) Civil War, or Great Rebellion.	1631. Herbert, <i>The Temple</i> .
	1643. Louis XIV. King of France.	1634. Milton: <i>Comus</i> (acted).
	1645. Execution of Archbishop Laud.	1642. Sir Thomas Browne, <i>Religio Medici</i> .
1648 or —49. Bunyan married, and took a cottage at Elstow.	1648-49. Second Civil War.	1644. Milton, <i>Areopagitica</i> .
	1649. The Commonwealth. Charles I. executed.	1645. Milton's minor poems published.
1653. Bunyan joined the Bedford Baptists.	1653. Cromwell Lord High Protector.	1650. Taylor, <i>Holy Living</i> .
	1660. The Restoration.	1653. Walton, <i>The Complete Angler</i> .
1660-61. Arrest, trial, and imprisonment (till 1672).	1661. Coronation of Charles II.	1659. Molière, <i>Les Précieuses Ridicules</i> .
	1662. Act of Uniformity.	
	1664. Conventicles Act. New York taken from the Dutch.	1663. Butler, <i>Hudibras</i> , Part I.
	1665. The Great Plague and the Great Fire in London.	1664. Butler, <i>Hudibras</i> , Part II.
1666. <i>Grace Abounding to the Chief of Sinners</i> .		1667. Dryden, <i>Essay of Dramatic Poesy</i> ; Milton, <i>Paradise Lost</i> .
		1668. La Fontaine, <i>Fables</i> .

Bunyan's Life and Works.	Contemporary History.	Contemporary Literature.
1672. Release from prison, license as a teacher, beginning of pastorate at Bedford.	1672. Declaration of Indulgence.	1671. Milton, <i>Paradise Regained</i> , <i>Samson Agonistes</i> .
1675-76. Second Imprisonment; <i>The Pilgrim's Progress</i> begun.	1673. Marquette's discovery of the Mississippi.	
1678. THE PILGRIM'S PROGRESS (Part I.)		1678. Butler, <i>Hudibras</i> , Part III. Dryden, <i>All for Love</i> .
1680. <i>Mr. Badman</i> .		
1682. <i>The Holy War</i> .	1682. Philadelphia founded.	
1684. <i>The Pilgrim's Progress</i> (Part II.)	1685. Accession of James II.	
1686. <i>A Book for Boys and Girls</i> (<i>Divine Emblems</i>).	1687. Declaration of Indulgence, Trial of the Bishops, The Revolution; Newton's <i>Principia</i> published.	1687. Dryden, <i>The Hind and The Panther</i> .
1688. Bunyan died, Aug. 31.	1688. Declaration of William of Orange.	
	1689. Accession of William and Mary, Toleration Act.	1690. Locke, <i>An Essay concerning Human Understanding</i> .

VIII. GLOSSARY.

Numbers in parenthesis refer to pages of this book. References to dictionaries are as follows:—

Century—The Century Dictionary.

Murray—A New English Dictionary on Historical Principles.

Skeat—Skeat's Etymological Dictionary.

abide (v.), endure: "He cannot *abide* to see us stand" (135). This transitive use has belonged to the verb from the beginning; but it is no longer common.

Why he cannot *abide* a gaping pig.

(*Merch. of Venice*, IV. i).

ale-bench (sb.), a bench in or before an ale-house (73).

amain (adv.), with all one's might (57). The derivation is *a* (= on, as in asleep) + *main* (an old English noun meaning might). See Murray, Skeat, or Century.

"Two massy keys he bore of metals twain
(The golden opes, the iron shuts *amain*)."

(Milton, *Lycidas*, 111.)

bedlam (sb.), a madman, lunatic (84, 85): "the *bedlam*, brainsick duchess" (2 Henry VI., III. i. 51). For the interesting origin of this word, see Murray, Skeat, or Century.

behind (adv.), later, to come, in the future: "I went through that which was *behind*" (71); "thought there was no more *behind* But such a day to-morrow as to-day" (*Winter's Tale*, I. ii. 63).

beshrew (v.), to curse, blame (19); often used by Shakespeare and earlier authors in expletive phrases, "beshrew him!" "beshrew me!" etc.; i. e., hang him, plague on him, etc. The word is also spelled *beshrow*. Investigate the noun *shrew*. A shrew (in our modern sense) is often called in earlier literature "a curst wife."

besides (adv.), to one side (18).

brainsick (adj.), (14). See the quotation under *bedlam*, above.

brave (adj.), distinguished, showy, vain: "What a *brave* companion have we got!" (73); "Oh, that's a *brave* man! He writes *brave* verses, speaks *brave* words, swears *brave* oaths, and breaks them *bravely*" (*As You Like It*, III. iv. 43). The French adjective *brave* keeps this sense in modern use. Investigate also *bravery*.

brunt (sb.), assault, attack: "meet with no more such *brunts*" (122). The plural is no longer common.

brush (sb.), encounter: "shrewd *brushes*" (62); "might have stood one *brush*" (119); "tempt not yet the *brushes* of the war" (*Troilus and Cressida*, V. iii. 34). The noun is derived from the verb *brush*, to dash. See Murray. To-day it is used of trials of speed in horse-racing.

butt (v.), to lead into, to abut: "many ways *butt* down upon this" (28).

carriage (sb.), bearing, behavior: "surly *carriages*" (12, 85). Modern use has only the singular in this sense. In Bunyan's time the plural was commonly used, as of the separate actions that make up behavior.

catch (sb.), watch; in the phrases *at the catch*, *on the catch*, etc.; i. e., in wait, on the watch for an opportunity of catching: "You lie *at the catch*" (77, 78); "absolutely *on the catch* for a husband" (Jane Austen, *Lady Susan*, xiv).

cheapen (v.), to buy in market, bargain, chaffer (84). The derivation is from the old noun *cheap*, from which comes also the adjective *cheap*. Investigate in Murray, Skeat, or Century, and compare the French phrase *bon marché*. "She would make a Puritan of the devil, if he should *cheapen* a kiss of her" (Pericles, IV. vi. 10).

cherubins (sb.), plural of cherub (15), as often in Shakespeare: "Still quiring to the young-eyed *cherubins*" (*Merch. of Venice*, V. 1). For the various plurals of this Hebrew word (*cherubs*, *cherubim*, *cherubims*, *cherubin*, *cherubins*), see Murray.

clap (sb.), stroke; in the phrase *at a clap* (95): "What, fifty of my followers *at a clap*?" (*Lear*, I. iv. 316).

clout (sb.), cloth, rag: "swaddling-*clouts*" (7); "as white as a *clout*" (116). The word was common until the nineteenth century, and is still heard sometimes.

congee (sb.), a formal salutation, a bow (94); properly a formal dismissal. The derivation is through the French from the Latin *commeatatus*, leave to pass. Formerly in common use, the word is now rare.

consent (v.), to agree: "they *consented* to erect there a pillar" (110). In this sense the verb was more commonly intransitive, with the preposition *to* or *unto*: "Saul was *consenting* unto his death." (*Acts* viii. 1).

contain (v.), used intransitively, as equivalent to refrain: "not being able longer to *contain*" (11). In this intransitive use it commonly referred specifically to continence: "if they cannot *contain*, let them marry" (1 Corinthians, vii. 9).

conversation (sb.), intercourse in general, dealings with men (50); the common meaning in Bunyan's time, conversation in our modern sense

being described by the word *conference*. Consult a concordance to the Bible, and investigate also the etymology.

countryman (sb.), a native of a (certain) country: "What *countryman*, sir?" (92; i. e., of what country are you?); "a couple of far *countrymen*" (94). This survives in England in such phrases as a *north countryman* (i. e., a north-country man).

cozenage (sb.), cheating, deceit, false pretence (94). See Murray or Century.

design (v.), used transitively in the sense of having designs on or intentions toward: "Judas *designed* the world in becoming religious" (98; i. e., he had worldly designs). This use was never common, and is now obsolete.

discover (v.), disclose (1, 30, 61). This meaning was the more common one in Bunyan's time. Investigate the etymology. Instances abound in the Bible and in Shakespeare. Compare the noun *discovery*, in the sense of disclosure.

dispose (sb.) disposition: "committing themselves to the all-wise *dispose* of Him that ruleth all things" (87); "what the unsearchable *dispose* of highest Wisdom brings about" (Samson Agonistes, 1746).

distemper (sb.), disease, disordered functions, or, in the language of earlier medicine, disturbance of the "humours" of the body: "a frenzy *distemper*" (11). Now-a-days the word is applied only to the lower animals. Investigate *temper* in a large dictionary.

do (v.): "we will *do* him word" (100). This may be an echo of a phrase common in the centuries preceding Bunyan, *do him wit*; i. e., cause him to know, let him know; for which see Murray, 22 c., under *do*.

doom (sb.), judgment, especially judgment at law (69); a word of much wider use in earlier times than now. The earlier decisions in English courts of law were recorded in what was called Doomsday Book.

doubt (v.), suspect: "all which things I *doubt* you want" (40); a rare use of the verb.

duty (sb.), religious exercise, attendance upon religious offices: "I have committed sin enough in one *duty* to send me to hell" (129). Murray (5 b. under *duty*) implies that this use of the word is Roman Catholic; but it is not uncommon in Bunyan.

eminent (adj.), imminent: "put thee into such *eminent* danger" (105). This, of course, is a confusion of words; but the confusion was not uncommon at the time. Murray traces it back even to the Latin originals of these words.

engine (sb.), contrivance, machine, snare (5): "nor did he scape By all his *engines*, but was headlong sent" (Paradise Lost, I. 750). See Murray, 5 c., under *engine*; and compare the word *gin* (62).

fair (adj.): "I was *fair* for the celestial city" (34). For this sense see Murray (14, under *fair*) or Century. It is exactly paralleled in Bunyan's contemporary, Baxter: "How *fair* you are for everlasting salvation" (*Call to the Unconverted*, iv). Compare the common metaphor in a *fair way*, and Shakespeare's adverbial use: "Yourself, renowned prince, then stood as *fair* As any comer" (*Merch. of Venice*, II. i. 20).

fantastical (adj.), fanciful, led astray by fancies, lacking in common sense: "misled *fantastical* fellows" (15); "a *fantastical* faith" (136); "ne'er a *fantastical* knave of them all" (*As You Like It*, III. iii. 108).

fat (sb.), vat: "Every *fat* must stand upon his own bottom" (38). Consult Skeat, and find in a concordance to the Bible references under *wine-fat*.

feud (sb.), enmity (in general): "put thee into a laughter or a *feud*" (151). This general sense lasted longest in the phrase "without *feud* or favor."

foil (v.), literally, to throw almost, but not quite. The term is taken from wrestling (compare the passage at the bottom of page 120): "who so *foiled* and run down" (122). It is derived from the noun *foil* (which see in Murray or Century), a term of wrestling used in distinction from a "fair fall." But it seems to be used here in a more general sense, as in the following: "the wrestler That did but lately *foil* the sinewy Charles" (*As You Like It*, III. ii. 14); "those armies bright, Which but the Omnipotent none could have *foiled*" (*Paradise Lost*, I. 273).

fowler (sb.), a hunter of birds (5). The word *fowl* has become narrowed in meaning. See Murray or Century for *fowl*, and a concordance to the Bible for *fowler*.

frenzy (adj.): "a *frenzy* distemper" (11). For the use of this word as an adjective, see Murray or Century.

furniture (sb.), equipment, especially military equipment, armor, etc.: "showed him all manner of *furniture* . . . as sword, shield," etc. (52). This is the common use of the time: "Money, and order for their (i. e., the soldiers') *furniture*" (1 Henry IV., end of III.); so "All *furnished*, all in arms" (IV. i. 96).

gin (sb.), snare, trap (62). See Skeat, and compare *engine* (5).

go (v.), to walk, as distinct from running or riding: "fell from running to *going*, and from *going* to clambering" (41); "Ride more than thou *goest*" (*Lear*, I. iv. 134). Chaucer and the mediæval romances and ballads often use the proverbial phrase, "whereso ye *go* or ride."

good (sb), produce, fruits, in a collective sense: "the *good* of the place is before you" (111). Compare our similar use of the plural *goods*. See a concordance to the Bible.

- governor** (sb.), master, tutor, director (31): "the heir . . . is under tutors and *governors* until the time appointed" (Galatians iv. 2.); "Commits itself to yours to be directed, As from her lord, her *governor*, her King" (Merch. of Venice, III. 2. 167.)
- harness** (v.), to equip with armor (52). *Harness* is the usual mediæval noun for armor. See Murray or Century. "The children of Israel went up *harnessed* (Exodus xiii. 18).
- have** (v.), to take, lead, conduct: "he *had* him into a private room (29, 30, 32, 45, 111); "*Have* her forth without the ranges" (2 Kings xi. 15). For other uses of *have* see *Notes on Bunyan's Grammar: Verbs*.
- hobgoblin** (sb.), an evil spirit, an apparition (59, 145). See Murray, Century, or Skeat.
- inkhorn** (sb.), a portable case for ink (33). See Ezekiel ix. 2. Why *horn*? Investigate the origin, and note other compounds with this word; e. g., powder-horn.
- jump** (v.), agree, coincide: I had always the luck to *jump* in my judgment with the present way of the times (93); "it *jumps* with my humour" (1 Henry IV., I. ii. 78). The verb is still used occasionally in this sense.
- leer** (v.), to slink away, evade: "he *leered* away on the other side, as one ashamed (64). This unusual sense of the verb is derived by Murray from the usual sense. It is located by the English Dialect Dictionary as belonging to Bunyan's county, Bedfordshire. The Century Dictionary notes a slang word *leery*, meaning sly.
- let** (v.) hinder; "to *let* them in their journey" (85). This is a different verb from *let*, to permit. See Murray or Century, and a concordance to the Bible. Hamlet (I. iv. 85) says; "I'll make a ghost of him that *lets* me."
- lie** (v.), to spend the night, to camp (124). This is a natural derivative sense of the verb. It extends even further, to mean besiege.
- like** (adj.), likely: "*like* to be benighted" (43); a common use of this century and the following, and still heard in the colloquial "as *like* as not."
- lime-twigs** (sb.), twigs smeared with birdlime, a sticky substance, in order to catch birds (5): "like *lime-twigs* set to catch my winged soul" (2 Henry VI., III. iii. 16). Investigate *birdlime*.
- livelihood** (sb.), sustenance: "his *livelihood* was upon things that were spiritual" (119). Bunyan's marginal note is: "Little-Faith could not live upon Esau's pottage."
- manhood** (sb.), valor, manliness (121, 122): "who, with a grain of *manhood* . . . might easily have shook off all her snares" (Samson Agonistes, 408).

next (adj.), nearest: "I fled the *next* way" (17, 115). This is the original sense of the word, which is a superlative. See Skeat.

nonage (sb.), minority, period before coming of age (55). What are the component parts of this word?

original (sb.), origin, source: "their *original* had been the dunghill" (51); "we are their parents and *original*" (Mid. Night's Dream, II. i. 117).

outlandish (adj.), foreign: "Some said they were . . . *outlandish* men" (84). This is the literal and original sense of the word. Compare the use of the word *Uitlander* by the Dutch in South Africa.

own (adj.): "be their *own* men again" (99); i.e., be in full possession of their faculties, be vigorous. The phrase also means to be one's own master; i.e., to be independent.

palliate (v.), satisfy, placate: "that I might them better *palliate*" (4); probably a solecism, since Murray cites only one other case where this verb is used with a personal object.

perspective-glass (sb.), telescope (113). See Century under *perspective*.

pillory (sb.), (86). See any large dictionary for a picture of the pillory.

plat (sb.), plot, place, area (17), as in 2 Kings ix. 26. The usual sense now is map; but the words *plot* and *plat* have not been sharply distinguished. One hears to-day *grass-plat*.

pleasant (adj.), witty, merry, cheerful, of persons (9). This sense, once common, is kept in our noun *pleasantry*.

practick (or *practic*) (adj.), practical; "the soul of religion is the *practick* part" (75); "So that the art and *practic* part of life must be the mistress to this theoric (Henry V., I. i. 51).

professor (sb.), one who makes public profession of religion or piety (34, 80, 116); a term common among Puritans: "This is a creature, would she begin a sect, might quench the zeal of all *professors* else" (Winter's Tale, V. i. 108).

presently (adv.), forthwith: "to him . . . thou mayest go and be helped *presently* (20). For the shifting sense of this word, see Century, or compare the instances in a concordance to Shakespeare. Is there anything in the etymology to explain this shifting? Compare a similar process in the word *quite*.

quag (sb.), quagmire, bog (59).

quit (v.), acquit (120), as in 1 Corinthians xvi. 13: "now *quit* you well (Lear II. i. 32); "Samson hath *quit* himself like Samson (Samson Agonistes, 1709).

rabblement (sb.), rabble (89): "The *rabblement* hooted and clapped" (Julius Caesar, I. ii. 245).

- rack** (v.), to drive before the wind, used especially of clouds: "saw the clouds *rack*" (35); "not separated with the *racking* clouds" (3 Henry VI., II. i. 26). See Murray, 1 under *rack* (v.), and 3 under *rack* (sb.).
- rarity** (sb.), a wonder, novelty (51, 99): "but the *rarity* of it is, — which is indeed almost beyond credit, — as many vouched *rarities* are" (Tempest, II. i. 58).
- round** (v.), whisper, speak low: "you should have taught me that lesson, which I will *round* you in the ears withal" (125); "they're here with me already, whispering, *rounding*" (Winter's Tale, I. ii. 217). For derivation and other instances see Century.
- rule** (v.), advise, counsel, commonly in the phrase "be *ruled* by me" (14); i. e., take my advice: "be *ruled* by me; depart in patience" (Comedy of Errors, III. i. 95).
- runagate** (sb.), renegade, vagabond (89). See *runagate* and *renegade* in Century. This is an instance of "popular etymology." Mispronouncing the word, and ignorant of its real origin, people connected it with *run* and *agate* (apace), and therefore so spelled it: "white-livered *runagate*, what doth he there?" (Richard III., IV. iv. 465).
- satyr** (sb.) (59), a mythical monster. See Century for picture and full account. Perhaps Bunyan had in mind Isaiah xiii. 21, and xxxiv. 14.
- scrabble** (v.), occurs in the earlier editions at page 117, where the later editions have *scramble*. The verb is still in colloquial use.
- shift** (v.), put out of the way, rid oneself of: "if they should meet with me in the dark, how should I *shift* them?" (44); "I *shifted* him away" (Othello, IV. i. 79).
- shrewd** (adj.), sharp, hard, of things: "*shrewd* brushes" (62). See the derivation of this word in Century.
- slumber** (sb.), a light sleep, a doze (41). See both the noun and the verb in Century.
- snib** (v.), to reprove, snub (Bunyan's marginal note to page 118).
- sottish** (adj.), stupid, foolish (24): "patience is *sottish* (Antony and Cleopatra, IV. xv. 79). See *sot* in Century.
- speed** (sb.), progress, success, especially in the phrases "ill *speed*" (16) and "good *speed*" (Genesis xxiv. 12).
- spill** (v.), destroy, kill: "there will I *spill* thy soul" (56); "So full of artless jealousy is guilt. it *spills* itself in fearing to be *spilt*" (Hamlet, IV. v. 20). Shakespeare usually has *spill blood*; Bunyan keeps the more general sense.
- stalking-horse** (sb.), a device for stalking game, a hunting blind, a means of concealing one's design: "make of . . . religion a *stalking-*

horse to get and enjoy the world " (98) ; " He uses his folly like a *stalking-horse*, and under the presentation of that he shoots his wit " (*As You Like It*, V. iv. 111). Compare the use of *horse* in *clothes-horse*.

stomach (sb.), metaphorically, courage, fortitude : " this is the height of thy *stomach* " (119) ; " raised in me an undergoing *stomach* " (*Tempest*, I. ii. 157).

swound (sb.), swoon (108), as commonly at the time. Cf. *stound* and *astound* with *stun*. Bunyan, in the first edition, has *drownd* as well as *stounded*.

take (v.), *To take with* (5) means to please. The verb is also used intransitively in the sense of taking a road, going : " the other *took* directly up the way to Destruction " (41).

true (adj.), honest, in the phrase *a true man* : " you are counted thieves already . . . therefore . . . you will not be found *true men* at the end " (39) ; " Whither away so fast ? A *true man* or a thief that gallops so " (*Love's Labour's Lost*, IV. iii. 187).

turncoat (sb.). The word is explained by the context (64). How does the meaning arise ? Find some other nouns compounded in this way (e. g., *cutthroat*). Is this the usual method of composition in English ? Compare *wire-puller*.

vaunt (v.), boast ; used absolutely (121), as in : " the foe *vaunts* in the field " (*Richard III.*, V. iii. 288).

witch (sb.), used of either men or women : " Simon the *witch* " (98). See *Century*.

BY CHARLES SEARS BALDWIN

Essays Out of Hours. Crown 8vo., Cloth, Gilt Top.

American Short Stories. Selected and Edited with
an Introductory Essay on the Short Story.
(Wampum Library) Crown 8vo.

A College Manual of Rhetoric. Crown 8vo.

The Expository Paragraph and Sentence. An
Elementary Manual of Composition. 16mo. 50
cents.

De Quincey's Flight of a Tartar Tribe. Edited
with Introduction and Notes. (LONGMANS'
ENGLISH CLASSICS.)

De Quincey's Joan of Arc and the English Mail
Coach. Edited with Introduction and Notes.
(LONGMANS' ENGLISH CLASSICS.)

Bunyan's The Pilgrim's Progress. Edited with
Introduction and Notes. (LONGMANS' ENGLISH
CLASSICS.)

NEW YORK: LONGMANS, GREEN, AND CO.

